Lately Published by the same Author,

The Register of the Most Noble Order of the Garter, from its Cover in Black Velvet, usually called the Black Book; having Notes placed at the Bottom of the Page, with an Introduction. In Two Volumes, Folio, with several Copper Plates. Printed for James Woodman, Bookseller, in Russell-Street, Covent-Garden, 1725.

Errata.

Page 74. Number LXXIX, instead of Coronation, read Creation. Appendix.
OBSERVATIONS
Introductory to an

Historical Essay,

UPON THE

KNIGHTHOOD

OF THE

B A T H.

By John Anstis Esq;
Garter Principal King of Arms.

LONDON:
Printed for James Woodman, in Russel-Street, Covent-Garden, and Sold by J. Roberts in Warwick-Lane, 1725.
OBSERVATIONS
Introductory to an
Historical Essay,
UPON THE
Knighthood of the BATH.

ON Occasion of a late Report, that a new Creation of Knights of the Bath, is intended, Questions have been proposed to me from several Persons, both in private Conversation, and by Letters, as well concerning the Origin, the Antiquity, the Dignity of their Degree, as concerning the ancient and solemn Rites of conferring it; for the Satisfaction of such Persons, and in Answer to their respective Demands, who have been pleased to consult me upon this Head, as supposing the Nature of my Office hath obliged me to make some more curious and particular Researches into the different
different Ranks and Distinctions of Men in civil Life, I have here made some cursory Observations, which may be sufficient, at present, to give a general Idea of this State of Knighthood, 'till I find a proper Opportunity for methodizing the Collections, which may be applied, towards compiling a regular, and more complete History, upon the Subject.

I. In Answer to the first Inquiry, concerning the Origin of this Degree, it may be observed, that the End of all Institutions in respect to Titles, or Offices of Honour, is to encourage and promote Vertue; That being the great Support and Security of civil Government. All wise and well regulated States, in the World, have ever been careful to reward such Persons, who have distinguished themselves by any vertuous Qualities, or Achievements, with certain publick honorary Badges of Distinction. And as Vertue tends, in all Instances, and in every different Branch of it, to promote the publick Good, so different Orders, or Rules of a vertuous Conduct, have been assigned to Men, by Means of which, they might, in their several Stations, be rendered, at once, more useful, and ornamental to Society.

The more specific Rule to that Degree of Knighthood, which I am now considering, and wherein the proper Character of it, as contradistinguished from other Orders, doth consist, is comprehended in the Reasons
Reasons of its Institution, which I am going to recite. It may be questioned, indeed, whether there is any Rule extant, in any Order, that may not be reduced to one, or other of the excellent Ends, for which this Degree, in particular, of the Bath was instituted; Ends so great, so good, so pious, and comprehensive, that they do not seem capable of receiving any Additional Improvement: For what can be laid to amplify, or illustrate the Design of an Institution, after we are told, It “is for the Exaltation of the Holy Christian Religion; the Support of the Rights of our Sovereigns; the Defence of their Realms; the Advancement of Justice; the Protection of Virgins, Widows, and Orphans; the Relief of the Oppressed; and for demonstrating the Affection of our Monarchs towards the Estate of Chevalrie; to the End, both their Subjects, and Foreigners may be rewarded for heroick military Actions, and towards exciting other Persons to imitate such Examples.” So that in respect to the Origin of this Degree, in general, we may conclude, it to be founded, upon religious, upon moral, and political Considerations.

II. In Reference to the Antiquity of Knighthood of the Bath, I shall cite the Authority of *Jean du Tillet*, who supposeth it to have been practiced by

---

*a Recueil des Roys de France, leurs couronne, & maison p. 431.*
the ancient Franks, with that of Mr. Camden to the same Effect, who writes, that He observed nothing more ancient concerning this Dignity, than that it was in Use among the old Franks: These were the Inhabitants of lower Germany, with whom, it is highly probable, the Saxons, who invaded England, had the same common Descent; and who, with other Customs, upon their Settlement here, introduced the same Method of Knighthood; Du Tillet farther remarks, these ancient Franks, when they conferred Knighthood, observed many solemn Rites; Before they performed Vigils, they bathed, to signify that such, who were admitted to this Degree, should be of a pure Mind, and of honest Intentions; Be willing to conflict with any Dangers, or Difficulties, in the Cause of Virtue; take Care both in their Words, and Actions, to follow the Maxims of Prudence; and on all Occasions, religiously observe the Rules of Fidelity, and Honour. Which Rites and Conditions, according to his Testimony, still continued to be practised in England; and from the Practice of them, Gentlemen were here denominated Knights of the Bath.

If it should be then admitted, that the Title is of no greater Antiquity, in this Kingdom, than from the Reign of Hen. IV; or, that we have not any authentick Monument, before his Time, which specifies a Degree

---

b Britannia p. 124. Ordines Anglia.
of Knighthood, under that express Appellation; yet this ought not to be considered, as any Argument, against the Antiquity of the Thing itself: For if the Ceremony of Bathing was formerly used, as it will presently appear to have been, in creating Knights, though our Historians have omitted, on the Occasion, to mention that Ceremony; yet all the real Ends of the Institution were equally answered, and the Honour of it, as effectually conferred, as if Bathing had been expressly mentioned by such Historians; it being usual with the best historical Writers, under some general Character, or Action, to imply, or suppose Things, with which such Character, or Action, was known to be constantly attended. For Instance, the Inauguration, or Coronation of the King, doth suppose, that all the other sacred concomitant Rites of that Solemnity, were then fully and regularly performed, though they may not be distinctly enumerated; The Rule holds, with Respect to all inferior Administrations, whether in religious or civil Life. The Honours of the Peerage, for Example, to which any Person hath been advanced, were ever presumed to be effectually conveyed, and the principal Rites, appropriated to the Conveyance of it, to be always performed, notwithstanding specifick Mention was not made by Historians, concerning the Performance of every separate Rite, in particular, then constantly used upon such Investitures.
It may be farther assigned, as a Reason, why Knights of the Bath had not that Appellation more early attributed to them by Historians, that it was the usual Custom, even in Records, and legal Courses of Procedure, to denominate all Knights by that Addition solely, without descending to specify the Order, or Degree of Knighthood, whereby they were respectively distinguished, as I have particularly observed in Reference to *Knights of the Garter*; who for several Reigns, successively, after that most noble Institution, were not yet stiled Knights of the *Garter*, in Patents from the Crown, or Instruments respecting their own private Affairs. But no one will therefore pretend to infer, in Contradiction to unquestionable Facts, that there were no Knights of the *Garter* antecedent to the Use of that Title.

Though the Denomination then was not used, yet if certain Ceremonies, peculiarly appropriated to this Degree, are mentioned by any former Historians or Records; Ceremonies, which had no relation to any other known Degree of Knighthood, we may justly conclude, this determinate Degree of Knighthood is thereby to be understood; as, particularly, from the Robes of Russet, or brown Colour, the crimson or scarlet Robe, the Vigils, the Bed, the Bed-ticking, the Matrace, the Canvas, the Sheets, the Oblation of

---

*c Introduct. to the Register of the Garter, p. 5.*
the Sword upon the Altar, &c. For since it doth not appear, that the Crown, at the Times referred to, did give Furniture, or Habiliments of this Kind, to Knights-Batchelors made by the Stroke of the Sword, or Bannerets, simply as such, or that they performed any of these Ceremonies; it undeniably follows, that Knights, to whom the like Furniture or Habiliments were given, and who actually went through all these Forms, are to be considered, as of a different Rule or Degree, both from Knights-Batchelors, and Knights-Bannerets.

Thus in a publick Creation of Knights, which was made by Edward the First, Matthew of Westminster reports the several known Ceremonies and the Vigils used on that occasion, without any recital of the Ceremony of Bathing in particular; yet in the Record or Account of the Wardrobe, particularly referring to that Creation, there is an Article, wherein a distinct Charge is exhibited for Expences solely belonging to the Bath, to the Covering of it, and of the Bed, &c. And there is the same Reason to conclude, that at other Creations, the same Rites of Bathing were used; though it was not necessary to mention them, where the Reason of the Fact, and common Usage supposed every thing done according to Form: But, in exhibiting a Bill of Expences, it is usual, and necessary indeed, on some Accounts, to descend to particular Cir-

e Appendix, Numb. xii, xiii.
cumstances, which yet it would be improper for an Historian to be minute, and scrupulously Particular in relating. And even the Clerks of the Wardrobe itself do not always mention those Particulars of the Covering of the Bath, and of the Bed, which yet are known to be implied, or tacitly comprehended in their Accounts: Even in the Reign of Hen. VII, a Roll exhibiting the Names and Arms of all the Knights created by him, only mentions in general, Knigths made at the Coronacion off the Kyng; Knigths made at the Coronacion off the Quene; Knigths made at the Creacion of Prynce Arthur; Knigths made att the Creacion off Hen-ry Duc of York; without descending to distinguish them, as Knights of the Bath; though these were certainly so; as will appear from the Instruments in the Appendix, taken from other Memoirs of that Reign.

This, I apprehended, might be conveniently premised, as introductory to what I am proceeding to cite from Mr. Camden, who relates, "That as to the "Knights of the Bath, he had found nothing more "ancient, than that this Dignity was in use among "the old Franks, and that Henry the Fourth, King of "England, on the Day of his Coronation, in the "Tower of London, conferred the same upon Forty-six "Esquires, who had watched all Night before, and

\[ 8 \]

\[ 124. \]
"had bathed themselves; that he gave to every one of them a green Side-coat reaching down to the Ankle, strait-sleeved, and furred with Menever, and having on the Left-shoulder two white silk Twists hanging loose, with Taffels at them;" which Words, as far as they relate to Henry IV, are apparently taken from Froissart's Narrative of that Coronation. Mr. Selden seems to have followed the Opinion of this learned Antiquary; for he writes, "that the first express Mention of the Knights of the Bath, as of a distinct Order, is commonly attributed to the Beginning of Henry the Fourth;" and he quotes the same Passage from Froissart, "that this King, at his Coronation, made Forty-six Knights at the Tower, who were bathed;" though he soon refers us to what he had said in the other Parts of his Treatise, about bathing, in making Knights-Bachelors (as he terms them) by the Kings of France and England; long before the Reign of Henry IV. Others have pretended to discover a more early Rise of this Dignity and Appellation, from a Statute in the 20th of Richard II, which in the old Prints was expressed in such a Manner, as might at first View support that Assertion; yet, upon consulting the original Record more carefully, it

---

g Appendix, Numb. 34.

b Titles of Honour, p. 678.

i Thinn's Advocate, and Anti-Advocate, MS. penes me, C. 2. p. 246 b.

Whitlock's Reading on the Statute of Pluralities, MS.
will be found, that the Word from whence the Mistake hath arisen is * hannuz banished, not, as it hath been supposed, baignees bathed; and accordingly it is observable, that in the Act of the 11th of Richard II, whereby the Persons mentioned in this Statute of the 20th Year, Belknap, Holt, and Burgleigh, three Judges, were banished, they have only the bare Addition of Knights; though indeed the two latter of them were really Knights created by Bathing: For though this Act of 20 Rich. II, by reason of what hath been already remarked upon it, cannot be regularly produced to shew, that they were so created; yet the Fact is evident from another 'Instrument of 7 Rich. II, the Authority of which cannot be disputed.

There are good Grounds to suppose, that the Custom of Bathing before Knights were formally constituted, was much more antient; and that Bathing, as previous to a Degree of Knighthood, and concomitant with the Vigils, had been introduced by the Saxons. We have indeed few Memorials of that Age relating to our Subject; however m Malmsbury informs us, that Alfred conferred on his Nephew Athelstan, some De-

\[ 10 \]

\( k \) Item nostre Seigneur le Roi est affentuz, & ad grauntes de fa grace espertiale par affent, & accord de toutz Seigneurs espirituelx & temporelx, & de toutz les Comones en cett Parlement a Robert Bealknap, John Holt, & William de Burgh, Chivalers bannuz, & demourantz en Irlond q'ils reviendrent en Engleterre, &c. St. 20 R. 2. c. vii.

l Append. Numb. 29.

m Appendix, Numb. 1.

gree
gree of Knighthood; in which Action he gave him a crimson Robe, which might not then be appropriated, but is now peculiarly appropriated to Knights of the Bath; and likewise a Sword, under the express Denomination of a Saxon Sword; which Article, as it may intimate that Custom of Knighting was introduced by the Saxons, and derived from them, so perhaps might be designed, as some special and standing Memorial to preserve the Remembrance of their Residence among us.

But Ingulfus, who lived at the Time of the Conquest (as it is usually termed) of this Kingdom by the Normans, is very particular, concerning the Practice of conferring Knighthoods by his Countrymen the Saxons.

"It was the Custom ("faith he) of the English, before the Norman Invasion, that he, who was to be regularly admitted to the Degree of Knighthood, should, on the Eve of the Day before his Initiation to that Degree, repair to some Bishop, Abbot, Monk, or Priest, and there, with all Humility and Compunction of Heart, confess all his Sins; and having received Absolution, should continue the whole Night in the Church, exercising the strict Offices of Piety, and a sincere Humiliation; that in the Morning he should hear Mass, offer his Sword upon the

n Appendix, Numb. 2. " Altar,
"Altar, and, after the Gospel, the officiating Priest should, with his Benediction, lay a Sword, sacred to that Use, upon this Knight's Neck, who then having participated of the Holy Mysteries of the Communion, was from that Time constituted and reputed a compleat Knight: Of which Custom (as he proceeds) the Normans expressed an high Detestation, as reputed Knighthood conferred in this Manner, to be of a mean, degenerate, and ignoble Creation."

Thus Ingulfus represents the Matter: But Mr. Camden and Sir Henry Spelman seem to be of Opinion, that the Normans did not really dislike, or discontinue this Practice; because William Rufus, Son of the Conqueror, was Knighted by Archbishop Lanfrank, and upon some other Accounts specified by them, which it is not here necessary to mention.

I shall not dissemble, that in the Passage cited from Ingulfus, he doth not use the Term Bathing; but this cannot be urged, upon any good Grounds, as a negative Argument, that Bathing therefore was not, at the Time of his Writing, used preparatory to the Vigils: For within the Space of eighteen Years after his Death, which happened in 1109, Bathing, as will appear from the Extract, that I am going to produce, is separately, and expressly mentioned, not as a new

---

o Britan. p. 126.
p Dissertatio de Milite in Reliquiis, p. 177.
Custom introduced, but as a common requisite Article among other known and received Rites of conferring Knighthood.

"... Geoffrey the Son of Fulk Earl of Anjou, which Earl was afterward King of Jerusalem, being in the fifteenth Year, the Flower of his Age, Henry the First, King of England, proposed to give his only Daughter in Marriage to him: Overtures were made to that End by King Henry to Fulk, who promised, that he would conform to the King's Pleasure, and Demands: Engagements were made, and solemnly ratified on each Part, and all Obstacles to the Execution of the Treaty seemed to be effectually removed: While the Negotiation was depending, the King sent a Message to the Earl, requiring, that his Son, who had not yet been initiated into any military Degree, should, at the approaching Pentecost, come honourably attended to Roan; that he might there receive his Arms in Form [that is, the Dignity of Knighthood] with other young Gentlemen of the same Age, and by that means participate in the Royal Festivities. The King found no Difficulty on occasion of this Demand; a just, and reasonable Request is easily granted. Geoffrey, by Command of his Father, upon the Prospect of being made Son-in-Law to a King, attended by five Lords..."
and a numerous Company of Knights came to Roan: The King, that he might the better discover his Temper and Capacity, proposed several Questions to him, and conferred with him after a free, and familiar Manner; the whole Day was spent in Joy, and Triumph: Early the next Morning a Bath was prepared, according to the Ceremonial when any Person is to receive Knighthood; then, after Bathing, he put on a linnen Shirt; over that a Vestment embroidered with Gold, and upon it a Mantle of Purple or Scarlet, with a Pair of silken Stockings, and Slippers on whose Outside golden Lyons were worked. The King's Son-in-Law being thus splendidly habited, an Horse of the finest Shape was prepared, and a Coat of Male made of double Rings, and of such a Temper as rendered it impenetrable to any Lance; his Boots for his Legs were likewise of Mail duplicated in the like Manner, and his Spurs were made of Gold; his Shield, charged with golden Lyons, hung upon his Neck; upon his Head he wore an Helmet adorned and enriched with many precious Stones, which was also tempered in such a Manner, that no Sword, or other Instrument of War, had Force sufficient to pierce it, and then was put into his Hand a Lance of Ash, armed at the Point with Iron of Poiétiers. In the Close of the Ceremonial, they delivered to

\[ b \text{ See Du Fresn Golf} v. \text{ Ferrum Pietaviens.} \]
him a Sword which had long been in the King's Armory, in embellishing which, one Galan, the most famous Engraver of that Time, had discovered great Art, and used much Industry. Our young Knight being thus armed, as a good Prefage of his future Gallantry, mounted his Horse with great Agility.

To conclude, that Day being peculiarly dedicated to the Honour of his Knighthood, and to uninterrupted Mirth; martial Exercises, and Decorations of Feasts, and Dresses, were the whole Business and Entertainment of it. The Solemnity of the Initiation of this Knighthood continued successively for seven Days."

Several Observations may be made upon this History, towards illustrating the present Subject: It is remarkable, in the First Place, that a King of the Norman Line, the Son of the Conqueror, yet observed Bathing, (which may be esteemed appendent to the Saxon Custom of Vigils) even when he was in his Norman Dominions beyond Sea: A Circumstance, which may be improved, to shew the Improbability of In-gulfus his Opinion, concerning the Dislike of the Normans to the Method used by the Saxons, in creating Knights: For it cannot be supposed, whatever political Reasons might induce a Sovereign Prince to certain Acts of Compliance with his People, against his Inclination and Sentiments, while he resided among them; yet, that in his foreign Dominions he would choose.
choose to act after a Manner disagreeable to his own Temper, and to that of his foreign Subjects.

II. This Creation of Knighthood, it may be farther observed, was, at the Time of solemnizing a Marriage; and the Degree of Knighthood of the Bath hath been since frequently conferred on the like Occasions. This Ceremony was performed upon one of the highest Festivals of the Year, the Day of Pentecost; in the Choice of which, it is not improbable, King Henry was rather determined for doing such an Act of Grace, since himself had been Knighted on that Anniversary in the Year 1084.

III. A considerable Number of young Gentlemen, by whom Geoffrey was attended, were knighted with him; and, conformable to that Practice, the same Usage hath been retained in subsequent Creations.

IV. It may very reasonably be concluded, that in the free and familiar Conversation which the King had with this young Candidate, he might himself descend to instruct him in the Nature, and Duties of the Degree with which he was preparing to honour him;


f Thus in Mr. Selden's Copy, in his Titles of Honour, p. 640. Ejus vero confodales qui cum eo militiae succipiendae munus expectabant, universi byssio & purpura innovantur.
a Conjecture, which may be more reasonably made, as this King, having been himself a Man of uncommon Erudition, would naturally be a greater Encourager of Ingenuity and Arts: And it will be evident from Precedents hereafter cited, that we have had several Monarchs who did not think it below their Dignity, personally to instruct the Esquires who were to receive this Honour of Knighthood from them.

V. There is a near Affinity observable between the Make of the Habits, as they are represented at that Time, and the Manner, and Ceremony of putting them on, with the Forms that are now used, in both Respects.

VI. And whereas an Horse, we are here told, was presented to the young Knight, it is well known, that in succeeding Times these Knights of the Bath were obliged to make Cavalcades with great State.

VII. Besides these several Usages, which might be derived from the Saxons, a Lance, a Coat of Mail, a Shield, an Helmet, &c. were delivered, which probably were according to the Norman Method of conferring Knighthood, by whom, according to the Customs of France, Tilts and Tournaments might be then practised, which yet were not introduced into this Realm till under the Reigns of the succeeding Kings.
VIII. In the Formularies of the Knighthood of the Bath, and in several Precedents cited in the Appendix, the Eldest and younger Sons of our Sovereigns, as well as other Candidates for this Honour, at their Coming to Court for the Reception of it, were only permitted to serve up the first Dish to the King's Table; and had not the Privilege of sitting down, until they had been actually made compleat Knights, according to the Rites of the Ceremonial: Which Custom is plainly intimated, in this History, by the Words, Regalibus gaudiis interesse; an Institution of great Antiquity; for 'Paulus Diaconus, who died in the Beginning of the ninth Century, in his History of the Lombards, is very full and clear to this Purpose; "You know, faith he, it is not customary, that even the Son of the King, should be permitted to sit at Table with him, except he hath first received Arms from some foreign Prince." And so late, as in the "Interview of the Emperor Charles IV, with Charles V King of France, in 1378, the Dukes who were not Knights, had not the Privilege of sitting at Supper with them, which was allowed to those who had been dignified with that Honour.

The next Testimony will be taken from John Salisbury, who lived to the Year 1182, and must be ad-

\[ L . i . c . 23. \] 
\[ Entreveus, &c. par Godefroy, p. 72. \]
mitted a competent Witness; because, under the Pontificate of Pope Adrian, his, and our Countryman, he took a Journey, in his younger Years, to Rome, to visit that Pope; and in his Journey (as it appears from his own Testimony) did himself receive the Honour of a Knighthood, from an Archdeacon, in Italy: He is indeed silent, as to the Articles of Bathing and Vigils, but mentions another Characteristic of this Knighthood, the Oblation of the Sword, as a Form pre-required; and which, he writes, still subsisted in his Time. Petrus Blesensis was his Contemporary, and Scholar at Paris, and as he had the farther Advantage of living for some Time in the Court of Henry II, so it must be supposed he was sufficiently qualified to judge of the Customs in that Court, especially of such, as were practised on the most publick, and signal Occasions. He observes, that, "formerly Knights obliged themselves, by a military Oath, to do true and faithful Service to the State; never to fly in Battel, and always to prefer the Publick Good to the Safety and Preservation of their own Lives; and even, at this Time the Candidates receive their Swords from the Altar; thereby interpretatively, and as by a visible Test of their Sincerity, declaring themselves true and faithful Sons of the Church; ready to maintain the Honour of the
"Priesthood, to defend the Poor, to punish Injustice, and to assert the Liberties of their Country: But this Design is now notoriously and shamefully perverted: they who are at present invested with Knighthood, being Enemies to the professors of Christianity, are the Men who invade and lay waste the Prouiency of the Church."

This Petrus Blesensis, whom we last quoted, died, as appears from a Record, before the Twentieth of May, in the fourteenth Year of King John's Reign; under which, we find Directions in the King's Wardrobe for providing Habits of Scarlet, of green or brown Colour, with Breeches and Shirts, Braccis & Camisii, which agree exactly with the Formulary of creating Knights of the Bath; and also Bedding, Coverlets and Sheets, which were doubtless for the Service of those who were to be Bathed: for no other proper, or indeed probable Occasion can be assigned for them: And like Orders frequently occur for providing Beds and Coverlets in the Reign immediately succeeding, and in that too of Edward the First. But, in this Reign, we have also a collateral Testimony to our Purpose from Matthew of Westminster, who, tho' he doth not, as we have already acknowledged, descend to specify Bathing; yet, in the

---

\[20\]

\[20\]

\[20\]

\[20\]
Record for providing Materials for these very Knights, whom he doth mention, the Bath is expressly mentioned. And, as several pertinent and useful Observations may, and will be made upon this Citation from the Monk of Westminster, I thought it might be convenient to insert a true and entire Copy of it.

"The King, to render his Expedition into Scotland more splendid and numerous, caused Proclamation to be made throughout England, whereby all Persons entitled [compellable] to take Knighthood by Right of Hereditary Succession, that is, by Lands descended to them; or who had Estates sufficient to support that Degree, were required, on the Feast of Pentecost, to attend at Westminster, where, every one of them should receive severally, out of the King's Wardrobe, at the King's Expence, all Things belonging to the Habit of Knighthood, except what related to the Furniture of his Horse [or Armour for such Knight]. At the Time and Place appointed, there was an Appearance of Three-hundred young Gentlemen, Sons of Earls, Barons, and Knights, to whom was distributed in ample Measure, according to their different Qualities, Purple, fine Linnen, Furrs, and Mantles embroidered with Gold: And because the

\[ 21 \]

\f Appendix, Numb. xiii.

" Royal
Royal Palace, though spacious, was not of Extent sufficient to accommodate so great a Number, they repaired to the New Temple; where they erected Tents and Pavilions, having first cut down the Trees in the Orchat, and levelled the Walls of it, that they might separately, and more commodiously dress themselves in their splendid Habits. That Night, as many of them performed their Vigils in the Temple-Church, as the Place would well contain: But the Prince of Wales, by Command of the King his Father, kept his Vigils in the Church of Westminster, with some other Persons of the first Dignity. There, the Noise of Trumpets and Pipes was so great, and the Acclamations of the People so loud and extended, that the Voices in one Choir could not be distinctly heard in another. On the Day following, the King invested his Son with the military Belt, and consigned to him the Dutchy of Aquitain. The Prince being Knighted, went to the Church of Westminster, that he might confer the like military Honour on his Companions; there, the Press, occasioned by a promiscuous Concourse of People, was so great, before the high Altar, that two Knights were stifled; and several fainted away; for every Knight had, at least, Three other Knights to conduct and support him. But the Prince was obliged, by Reason of the tumultuous Crowd, to invest his Companions upon the high
"Altar, having, by his Guards, made Way for them to pass through the People. Then were brought and presented two Swans, introduced with much Pomp, and covered with golden Nets, adorned and embossed with golden Studs, a Solemnity highly grateful to the Spectators: The King offered a Vow to God, upon the Presentation of the Swans, that he would make a Descent upon Scotland, with a Design, whether he should live or die in the Attempt, to revenge the Death of John Comin, and the violated Faith of the Scots, &c.

Thus Matthew of Westminister describes the Celebration of this great Festival; wherein there is a particular Article, somewhat foreign indeed to our Subject; which, however, I shall proceed, directly, to explain; that is, a Vow, made upon the Exhibition, beforementioned of two Swans, in Conformity to an Usage, continued for

In the sumptuous Festival held by Philip Duke of Burgundy at Lisle, on the 17th of February 1453, after the Feasts were finished. En telle ordonnance vinrent les Officiers d’Armes, & le dernier d’eux estoit Toison d’Or, Roy d’Armes, lequel portoit en ses mains un Paifant en vie, orne d’une riche Collier d’Or garny de pierres fines, & de perles. — Et apres la reverence le dit Toison d’Or parla a iceluy Duc en cette maniere, Trefhaut & trefpuiſſant Prince & mon tres redouſte Seigneur, Voyez icy les Dames, qui trefhumblement fe recomandent a vous: & pour ce, que c’eft la coutume, qui a efté anciennement inſtitue, qu’es grandes Feſtes & nobles Assemblies, on presente aux Prince, & Seigneurs, & aux nobles Hommes le Paon, ou quelqu’autre noble Oyſeau, pour faire des voeux utiles, & valables: pour ce ſubject on m’a envoye avec ces deux Damoifelles, pour vous preſenter ce noble Paſſant; vous priant que le veilez avoir enſouvenance: ces paroles eſtans dites, iceluy Duc prit un brief ecrit, lequel il bailla a Toison d’Or, &c, and thereon he vows an Expedition against the Turks, Hist. Chronolog. du Charles 8. p. 672, and the same Narrative is in Olivier de la Marche, p. 428.

Chiflet Breviar. Hist. Velleris Aurei, c. 3. endeavours to explain this Custom.
some Ages; according to which, when any hostile Expedition was intended, the commanding Prince formally and solemnly bound himself to execute it upon the Oblation of some Bird, as a visible Test or Signal of such Engagement.

*Matthew of Westminster* informs us, the Creation of these Knights was made, by Virtue of Writs directed to the Sheriffs, and we find indeed such Writs upon Record: and it is farther acknowledged, that other Writs were at that Time also sent to the Sheriffs towards an Election of Members of Parliament, to the End, such Aid might be given, which should become due to the King upon the Knighthood of this Prince: But if any of the young Gentlemen, the Sons of Earls, Barons, or Knights, as our Historian doth severally denominate them, who was to be promoted to this Degree, had not arrived to the Age of One and twenty Years; or if any of them was not seized of an Estate, to the Value required by the Law; in either of these Cases, a Proclamation by the Sheriff could not extend to bring such Person under an Obligation to

---

*b* Claus 34 E. 1. m. 16. dorfo. Rex Vic. Linc. Salutem. Præcipimus tibi, quod per totam bailivam tuam in locis, quibus videris expedire, tam infra Libertates, quam extra, publice proclamaris facias ex parte nostræ, quod omnes illi, qui Milites non sunt & Milites esse voluerint, veniant utque *London* citra diem *Pentecostes* prox. futur. ad apparatus fuos eis in hoc cau necessarios de Garderoba nostra recipiendos de dono nostro, ut Arma Militaria de nobis ibidem fluctere valeant diâto die. Teste Rege apud Woluefeye 6 die Aprilis. Edem modo mandatum eft singulis Viccomitibus Angliae.

accept the Degree of Knighthood: And they being Persons of the first Distinction, as it may be concluded from a List of their Names published by Mr. Aylemole, there is no Question, but the determinate Ages of several of them may be ascertained from Records, which I am not now at leisure to consult, and therefore shall only observe, at present, that many of them are expressly mentioned in that List, as Sons of particular Persons; some of whom, it is supposed, might be living at the same Time. The Crown indeed was interested, in order to support a considerable Branch of the Revenue, not to admit any Person under Age to the Dignity of Knighthood, upon the Summons, and Return of the Sheriff; because, in case any Minor should have been actually knighted, the King had lost the Benefit of the Royal Prerogative, in respect to the Wardship of his Body, and the Marriage of his Person: and therefore, antiently, in Grants of Wardship by the Crown, there was a special Provision, that the Assignee, or Guardian should not assist his Pupil, in any Measures, towards his Reception of Knighthood, 'till the King's Consent should be previously obtained: and for this Reason it is still supposed, upon good Grounds,

---

k History of the Garter, p. 38.
1 Rot. Pip. 15 H. 2. Norf. Avelina de Ria reddit compotum de 140/. 13 s. 4 d. quod fecit filium suum militem, qui erat in custodia Regis.
Cart. 5 Joh. n. 199. Wardship of Rob. de Stutevill granted the to Archbishop, dum ipsum non maritabit, nec militem faciet, nisi per voluntatem nostram.

that
that Gentlemen under Age, who were to be advanced to
the Knighthood of the Bath, had Letters Missive, from the
Crown, immediately directed to them, or to their Guards-
ians, requiring them to receive that Degree upon So-
lemn Occasions: And consequently, it seems, no Mi-
nor was under any Engagement to receive it, by Virtue
of any Mandate directed to the Sheriff. For, as to
this Writ of 34 Edward I, now under Consideration,
it may be proper to advertise, that it is only a Pro-
clamation of Favour or Indulgence, inviting such
Persons, who were not already Knights, "qui milites
" non sunt, & milites esse voluerint," and were desirous
to receive Knighthood, that they might appear to ac-
cept that Degree; and not a Proclamation, by Way of
Command, or strict authoritative Compulsion to those,
who were under any Engagement by Tenure to be
Knighted, or else might be fined; in which Case, the
Clause was "omnis, qui milites esse debent, & non sunt"
all such, who ought to be Knights, and are not so; and
the Sheriff is not here directed, or empowered perso-
nally to summon, or to return the Names of any Per-
sons; which are the Terms used in the Form of the
Writs, that command Persons, obliged by Virtue of
their Tenures, to take Knighthood upon them: It is
highly probable, that in regard to the ready and loyal
Zeal of those, who, for the King's Service and Plea-
sure, made a voluntary Tender of themselves, to ac-
cept Knighthood on this Occasion, and did not accept
it from any Motive of legal Constraint, had some particular Marks of Favour then conferred on them.

II. In this Extract we find Musick, and different Kinds of musical Instruments, which are still retained when Knights of the Bath are created, with some Variation, as expressing the Joy, and contributory to the Grandeur of the Solemnity.

III. Every Knight-Candidate had, at least, three other Knights, Milites; which may possibly design the Veteran Knights, who instructed him in the Rules of the Bath; and by whom, according to the Ceremonies, such Candidate was to be introduced to the Presence of the Sovereign, or to his Lieutenant; or we may understand by them, the two Esquires-Governors, and the young Esquire, who, by the Formularies, are required to attend him.

IV. It appears also, there was some Difference in the Furniture provided on the Occasion, according to the different Quality of the Persons to be created Knights; and the Custom hath been conformable to this Rule: for we find Habits provided under the following Distinctions, \( m \) tanquam pro Milite simplici, as, for Knights simple; \( n \) tanquam pro Baneretto, as, for Knights-Banne-

---

*Appendix, Numb. 10, 16.*

*Appendix, in several Places.*
rets; *tanquam pro Comite, as, for an Earl; p comme
pour celuy, qui est fitz de Conte, as, for the Son of an Earl.

V. In Regard to the Number of the Knights men-
tioned by this Historian, I must take the Liberty of
marking, upon the Authority of the Record here re-
ferred to, that he was mistaken. There were not, as
it appears from this Instrument, Three hundred Gentle-
men then knighted, but only Two hundred sixty se-
ven; whose Names being already printed by q Mr. Asb-
mole, it was not necessary to repeat them in the Ap-
pendix, where a distinct Account is given of the Habits
provided by the Wardrobe on the Occasion. At which
Time it is also memorable, as I have Authority to ob-
serve from a Manuscript in my r Custody, that the
Earls of Hertford and Lincoln, at that Time, performed
the Ceremony of putting on the Spurs of the Knights;
one of the grand Rites in conveying this Degree of
Knighthood.

Under the Reign of Edward II, the Accounts of
the Wardrobe are still more express, and particular, in
mentioning the Articles relating to the Creation of

---

o Appendix, Numb. 20.
p Appendix, Numb. 13.
q History of the Garter, p. 37.
r Appendix, Numb. 14.

Knights;
Knights; they recite, that Orders were given for providing, *Capam intus vigilandum*, an Outer-garment; for that, doubtless, is the *Signification* of the Term, to defend them from the cold Air of the Night; and we learn also from the same Accounts, that this *"Garment* was of a mixed, or murray Colour.

The Creation, upon the 20th Day of January, in the 20th twentieth Year of Edward II, was appointed, by the Command of the King's eldest Son; between which Time, and the Renunciation of his Father, only five Days intervened; and therefore the Knights, for whom Robes were then prepared upon this Mandate, are concluded to have been Knights of the *Bath*, who attended on the Son's Coronation, on the first Day of *February* following. These Orders discover a farther Particular, that Cloth of Gold, grounded upon diapred Silk, was also then delivered; which, in the Accounts of succeeding Reigns, is often termed *Racamatz*, and *Sigaflon*.

The next *Instrument*, to which I refer, bears date five Days after, being the Day of Edward the Third his Accession to the Throne; at which Time, he had not himself been knighted: It bears the express Title *pro Militia Regis*, for the King's Knighthood, and contains

---

*D Appendix, Numb. 16.*
*† Du Fresne Glof. v. Capa.*
*
*‡ Appendix, Numb. 16, 20.*
*y Dugd. 1 Vol. Baron, p. 143. of the Mortimers, and in several other Places.*
*x Append. Numb. 22.*
*
*‡ Appendix, Numb. 21.*

the several Materials provided by the Wardrobe for that purpose, and they are such, which are still continued for the same Use; though for the King's Service, upon this his personal Knighthood, they were of a more rich and curious Composition.

It is more particularly remarkable, from this Record, that with reference to the Ornaments of the Chamber, wherein the King was to bathe, there is a Circumstance mentioned, which discovers, the King's Arms were placed in the Corners of the Tapestry; and the Method of placing the armorial Ensigns of Knights of the Bath, in the Room where they bathe, still continues. It likewise appears from the same Record, the King performed his Vigils on the Last of January; and we know, that he was solemnly crowned on the Day following.

Our Writers are divided in Opinion, as to the particular Person, by whom this Creation of Knighthood was actually solemnized: they who suppose him to have been John of Heinault, afterward Earl of Cambridge, seem to me to form their Judgment upon the most probable Grounds, as it was more especially, by his Interest, this King obtained the Throne.

In the third Year of his Reign, there is an Entry, directing Provisions to be made for Vigils, Beds, and

---

c Appendix, Numb. 22.

Robes,
Robes, according to the usual Manner: and in the Year following there is the like Entry in Behalf of five Knights, who were, probably, made at the Coronation of the Queen-Consort, mentioned in that Account as crowned on the 18th of February: One of these Knights, Thomas de Bradstan, by special Favour from the Crown, received an Augmentation of several Presents, above the usual stated Allowances; among which were four Pair of Spurs, six Pair of Gloves, three Girdles of white Silk, four Pair of Hose or Stockings of brown Cloth, one Saddle cum arsone albo, with a white Saddle-bow, a shaving Balon, &c. all which Articles are still used by Knights of the Bath, at their Investiture.

In the fifth Year of this Reign, Sir Walter Manny had Materials appointed for his Vigils and Bed: This Knight rendered himself most famous, by a Course of martial and brave Exploits, for which he was at length deservedly elected a Companion of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

In the two Years succeeding, we find the usual Preparations in favour of several Judges, who were to be created Knights: and in the 21st of the same King, Maurice Fitz-Thomas of Ireland, Philip de Staunton, and Thomas de Fencotes had the like Materials for their
Knighthood on the Day of our Lord's Nativity; afterwards, in the 34th of this Reign, two Judges received also the like Provisions for Knighthood at Christmas.

In the 7th Year of Richard II, two Judges of the Common Pleas had the like Furniture for their Knighthood at the same Festival; and in the eleventh Year, Orders were issued for providing the usual Materials for the Knighthood of the two Chief Justices, who were to receive this Degree at Windsor on the Feast of St. George. In the Twelfth of that Reign, there is a Bill of Account, which mentions the silken Lace, the black Stockings, the white Scabbard for the Sword, a black Saddle with a white Saddle-bow, the pectoral Plate, and the black Bridle for the Horse, &c. all which are still used by Knights of the Bath, upon their Creations. And, in the following Year, Directions were given, that Robes should be prepared for the Earls of March and of Stafford; and for Alfonso, Son of the Count of Denia in Arragon, with the requisite Provisions for their Bathing, and Beds, at the Feast of St. George, in the said Year. The Father of this Alfonso having been taken Prisoner in the Battle of Nazarre, the Son was sent a Hostage into England, as Security for his Honour, and Appearance: Our Records and Historians inform us, that he resided here

for several Years in that Quality, his Father not having taken care to perform the Conditions necessary to his Discharge and Return; yet, during the whole Time of his Residence, though so long protracted; he gave all possible Proof, that he had, with a strict Notion, a most tender and powerful Sense of Honour, and that no Temptation, or Opportunity could ever induce him to entertain a Thought of falsifying his Promise.

The next Extract, to which I refer, is taken from Froissart, wherein we have an Account of the Knighthood conferred on the four Kings of Ireland by Richard the Second, after they had performed their Vigils. The printed Copy represents these Kings as sitting, on that Day, at King Richard's Table: But, according to a very beautiful Manuscript-Copy of our Historian, curiously embellished with Limnings in the brightest Colours, these Irish Potentates served that Day at the King's Table; though there is an obvious Method, which may be proposed, for reconciling the seeming Difference between these two Accounts. There are reasonable Grounds to conclude, that these Irish Kings, upon their Appearance at the Court of the King of England, in order to take this Degree, might, in the Quality of Esquires, according to the Formulary, serve up the first Dishes, and when they had the Character

---

n Appendix, Numb. 33.
0 In Custody of Mr. Woodman the Bookseller.
of this Knighthood actually conferred on them, were then permitted to have the Honour of sitting at Dinner with his Majesty.

We proceed now to consider another Report of Froissart's, concerning the Coronation of Henry IV, which is acknowledged by Mr. Camden to be the most ancient Testimony he had found, relating to Knights of the Bath: "Mr. Selden adds, "That the first express Mention of them, as a distinct Order, is commonly attributed to the Beginning of this Reign." I shall here render the Words of Froissart, recited in the Appendix, and from whom we learn, "That the Vigil before that Coronation, was on the Evening of Saturday, on that Occasion, and at that Time, in the Tower, there watched, faith he, that Night, all the Esquires, who were on the next Morning to be created Knights, to the Number of Forty-six, each of them had his Esquire [attending him] a separate Chamber, and each his separate Bath, where the Rites of Bathing were that Night performed. On the Day following the Duke of Lancaster [Henry IV.] at the Time of celebrating Mass, created them Knights, giving them long green Coats, the Sleeves whereof were cut straight, and furred with Minever, and with great Hoods or Chaperons furred in the same
"Manner, and after the Fashion used by Prelates; and every one of these Knights, on his Left-shoulder, had a double Cordon, or String of white Silk, to which white Tassels were pendent."

This Passage, it is granted, tho' not easily accounted for, when we consider Mr. Camden's profound Skill in Antiquities, yet, might have been the first, that occurred to his Observation from our Historians, printed in his Time, relating to the Bathing of Knights in this Kingdom. But this being admitted, by what Rule of Argumentation could any Person, from these Words of Froissart infer, that Knights of the Bath, had their first Institution at that Coronation; or from that Period, commenced to be a distinct Order of Knighthood.

An Order, in the large Sense of the Word, is of equivocal, and very indeterminate Signification; it is attributed indifferently to every Degree of Knighthood; and several Records in the Appendix confessedly term that Knighthood, wherein Baths were prepared, a military Order, ordinem Militarem: But when we speak of an Order, in a strict, or more restrained Sense, according to the Definition, or rather, as I have chosen to express my self, the Description of it, in the Place to which the Reader is here directed; that is, if by an Order, we understand a Brotherhood, Fellowship, or...
Affiliation of a certain number of actual Knights; subjected under a Sovereign, or Great Master, united by particular Laws and Statutes, peculiar to that Society, not only distinguished by particular Habits, Ensigns, Badges, or Symbols, which usually give Denomination to that Order; but having a Power, as Vacancies happen in their College, successively, of nominating, or electing proper Persons to succeed, with Authority to assemble, and hold Chapters; according to this State of an Order, it is not easy to be conceived, how any learned Man could ever infer, from the forecited Testimony of Froissart, that the Knights of the Bath had their Commencement at this Time, as Knights strictly and regularly of a Military Order.

But not to insist upon the ambiguous Signification of Words, or to enter upon a specific Enquiry here, whether the Knighthood of the Bath, was properly an Order of Knighthood at this Time, or in any former Time; this is certain, from the Authority of unquestionable Records; that, long before this Time, Provisions were made for the Baths, and Coverings of the Baths, prepared at the Creation of Knights.

There is a Record still remaining, which specifies the very Materials delivered from the Wardrobe for these Knights, made at the Coronation of Henry IV,
which were no more, than an Upper-coat of Russet for the Vigils, a Mantle of green Tartarin irradiated with Gold, furred with Minever, and Cloth of Gold, termed Racamatz, for their Beds, with Linnen of Brabant, and Flanders, and Carde; all which Articles are contained in Words of the same import, in the Accounts of the Wardrobe inferred in the Collections, which were for several Reigns antecedent to the Reign of Henry IV.

From this Record, we likewise learn the Names of some of the Persons, who had then this Knighthood of the Bath conferred on them.

Thomas, John, and Humfrey, the younger Sons of that King, were then in their Infancy: The First was born in 1388, the Second in 1389, and the Last in 1390; and this their Father’s Coronation was on the Thirteenth of October 1329.

Mr. Sandford saith, That the eldest Son of the King, was then likewise created a Knight of the Bath, which must be a Mistake; for I may affirm, with assurance, upon good Grounds, though I cannot distinctly recollect my Authority for my Assertion, that this most heroic Prince received the Honour of Knighthood from Richard II, in Ireland.

# MS. in Office Arm. inter Cod. Notf. n. 48.
# Rot. Parl. 1 H. 4. n. 61.
There were likewise several of the Nobility then promoted to the same Dignity, whose Names are recited in this Instrument; but the Time, to which I have limited myself, doth not permit me to make such distinct Inquiry, as may precisely determine their respective Ages: and for the same Reason I have not, in the former Part of this Introduction, descended to specify the Ages of those Noblemen who were honoured with this Degree. However, I think proper, incidentally, to take notice, from a Circumstance, which leaves no Room for Doubt, or Uncertainty, that the Earl of Arundel, the First of the Noblemen here mentioned, who were not Princes of the Blood, was at this Time only fourteen Years old; for, upon the Death of his Mother, in the sixth Year of this King's Reign, he was in the twentieth Year of his Age.

The Record concludes, by naming Sir ...... Beau- mond, with Thirty-three Knights besides, then created; though, the Names of these Knights are not inscribed; which Omission Hollinghead hath, in some Measure, supplied. And here it may not be improper for me to remark, that besides the legal and customary Fees, which Knights of the Bath were obliged to pay to the Heraldick Officers; the King himself, by Way of Largeffe, out of his Royal Munificence, ordered a certain

\[ 38 \]
Sum $b$ to be distributed among them, for their Attendance at the Solemnity of creating these Knights; and we find the like Orders issued by the Kings his Successors.

At the $d$ Coronation of Henry V, we have a particular Detail of the Ceremonies used in creating Knights of the Bath; of which, a Translation is here exhibited. "In the Year 1413, in the twenty-sixth Year of the Age of Henry V, on a Friday, which preceded the Sunday before the Passion [Week], all the Requisites for his Coronation having been prepared by the Direction of his Ministers, according to the ancient, and laudable Rites, and Usages of the Kingdom: The King, accompanied with a noble and numerous Train of Lords Spiritual, and Temporal, set forward from his Palace of Kingston upon Thames, towards the Tower of London: he was met on the Way by a great Number of Earls, Barons, Knights, Esquires, and other his Subjects of Condition; particularly, the Citizens of London; who made a splendid, and handsome Appearance, sparing no Expence, whereby they might testify their Zeal and Exultation, while the Clergy made a regular Procession, with much Solemnity. The King, in this Manner, and under so many Marks of Ho-
nour, was conducted to the Tower of London; where, about fifty gallant young Gentlemen, or more, of noble Birth, well qualified, to receive the Degree of Knighthood, waited in expectation, that they might receive this Honour from the Hands of so great a Monarch, at the first opening of so glorious a Solemnity. These young Candidates, being decently habited in their proper Vestments, to express the more Honour to the King at so grand a Feast, to which nothing requisite for the Magnificence of it was wanting; and while his Majesty in royal State, as became his Dignity, was attended by the great Lords; those Candidates, in Testimony, that they should not be obliged at any Time future, to do the like Service in the Habit of Esquires, served up the Dishes at this royal Festival, according to the received Usage: and, immediately, after the Entertainment was concluded, they retired to an Apartment appointed and prepared for that Use; where Dukes, Earls, Barons, and honourable Knights, as their Counsellors, or Directors, instructed them concerning their proper Rules of Behaviour upon their Accession to this venerable Order; and with much prudent, and forcible Persuasion, taught them what they ought to do, if they would faithfully discharge the proper Duties of it. The young Candidates, according to Custom, at a convenient Time prescribed, went into the Baths pre-
"pared severally for them, performing their Vigils, and the other Rites, and Exercises preparatory to this Degree, regularly, with Assiduity, and an intense Degree of pious Zeal. The whole Night having been devoted to these Lucubrations, early the next Morning, upon the first Appearance of Light, these Candidates, having given the rich golden Beds, wherein they had reposed themselves in the Night, to some domestick Servants of the King's Household, as their customary Fee, proceeded to hear Mass; and when they had gone regularly through the Course of their Devotion, having mounted their fine Horses, they rode, in their rich silk Mantles, till they came to the Gate of the Royal Palace; where, descending from their Horses, each of them, being supported by two Knights, and conducted with all proper Marks of Honour, and Respect, suitable to his different Quality, was introduced, and presented to the King; who, sitting in royal State, the Throne being surrounded with a numerous Train of noble and great Personages, promoted them severally to the Honour of Knighthood: After their Investiture, they were permitted to sit down in their rich silk Mantles in the King's Presence; but did not, during the whole Time of Dinner, taste any Part of the Entertainment. After the royal Feast was concluded, the young Knights divesting themselves of their Mantles, put on rich G Robes,
“Robes, being the King's Livery of the same Suite; and when the King, in the Vigil of the Sunday before Passion-Week, rode to Westminster, in much State and solemn Order, attended with a great Concourse of Princes and Noblemen, as became the Grandeur of so potent a Monarch; all these young Knights preceded the King, riding on their Horses in admirable Order, through the Middle of the City, and made so delightful an Appearance, that all the Spectators seemed to be inebriated with Joy.”

Every one of the particular Rites here expressed, perfectly agrees with the Ceremonial now in use; and from that Use, as from the former Quotation about Geffery of Anjou, and another, that will be inserted relating to the young King of Sicily; we learn, that the Habits of Esquires were different from those of Knights: And it seems to be also here intimated, that these Candidates had Knights appointed to instruct them, which were of their own respective, and proper Degrees; because we find such Office of Instruction, promiscuously imposed upon Dukes, Earls, Barons, and Knights, and severally exercised by them; of which Practice, Precedents are inserted in the Appendix.

---
e I may, on some future Occasion, make a Disquisition concerning these Distinctions, in this and foreign Kingdoms; but, to prevent too great an Interruption in the Course of these Remarks, I shall now only refer the Reader to the Sumptuary Laws.
It may contribute to gratify the Reader's Curiosity, if I should here descend to take Notice, concerning the Prohibition, imposed on a Knight, of not eating; the first Instance whereof, in this *Introduction*, occurs from the Passage before us. The Words containing this Prohibition in the Ceremonial, both *French* and *English*, express, that he ought not to eat or drink, but under the Restraint of a Bride, upon the Day of her Marriage. This Rule, as it relates to the other Sex, appears to have been more peculiarly adapted to the native Innocency, and simple Manner of former Ages: It may not be unentertaining to cite a Passage from *Chaucer*, upon this Occasion, which discovers how reserved, and modest, the Comportment of our *English* Ladies was, in his Time.

The Names of the Knights then created, may be collected from the *Record of the Wardrobe*; and the preparatory Materials for their Creation were, according to usual Precedents, delivered out of that Office.

This King, in the *fifth* Year, or rather, according to more exact Computation, in the Sixth, promoted

---

*f* *The Merchants Tale of the Marriage of January with May, v. 1375,*

but fresh May

_Hold ih hir Chamber unto the fourth Day_,
_A usage is of Wives for the best, &c._

v. 1455.

_A Custom is unto these Noblis all,_
_A Bride shall not eat in the Hall,_
_Till Days four, other thre at the leFFE_ _Trissid bin, then let her go to Feste._

*g* *Appendix, Numb. 38.*

*Appendix, Numb. 39.*
Several Persons to the Knighthood of the Bath, whilst he was in Normandy, on the Anniversary Feast of St. George.

In his ninth Year, upon the same Anniversary, at Windsor, he conferred the like Dignity upon the King of Scotland, and upon the Earl of Stafford. This King was James, the First of the Name, in that antient Monarchy; who, in the ninth Year of his Age, 1406, whilst his Father was yet living, being sent toward France, in order to his Education, was taken in the Voyage by the English, and brought into this Kingdom; where he was detained, for the Space of eighteen Years.

This is the last Account, from the Wardrobe, to which I have referred, in the Appendix; though a much greater Number of Precedents might have been cited, from that Office, if the Occasion of my treating, professedly, upon this Subject, had been foreseen. But when I perused the Records of the Wardrobe, having no Design of collecting from them, any Informations, but what related to the History of the most Noble Order of the Garter, I only made Extracts of such Memoirs, as had some more special, and direct Reference to that Undertaking.

After the Demise of this most victorious King, we find, in the Inventory and Appraifement of the

\[ \text{i Appendix, Numb. 40.} \quad \text{k Appendix, Numb. 41.} \]
Goods, which he devised for Payment of his Debts, an Article, specifying Tartarin irradiated, for the Habit of Knights of the Bath.

Henry the Sixth was born on the Festival of St. Nicholas, in December 1421, and on Whit Sunday 1426, he was knighted by his Uncle the Duke of Bedford, who had himself been created Knight of the Bath in the first Year of his Father's Reign. This Record, indeed, according to the Letter of it Imports, that a Summons was issued to several Persons, requiring their Appearance, in order to their being knighted with the King, without descending to specify the particular Degree of Knighthood, which was then to be conferred: But that these Persons here summoned, had really the Knighthood of the Bath conferred on them, may be concluded from what hath been observed before, concerning the Practice in the like Cases. For here some of these Mandates were immediately directed to the Guardians of young Gentlemen, who were in Wardship, and others to the Parents of young Persons of noble Birth, to attend, in pursuance of such Summons, to receive Knighthood: So that according to my former Conjecture, for I only call it so, tho' it hath so many strong Appearances of Probability and Truth, whenever Letters Missive to the like effect were

---

m Append. Numb. 42.  
n Appendix, Numb. 36.  
0 See above, p. 24, 25, 26.
thus sent by the Crown on solemn Occasions, and at royal Feasts, directly to the Persons, or to the Guardians of those, who were in their Minority to command their Appearance, in order to their being knighted, and not by the Intervention of Writs to the Sheriffs; which Practice will be confirmed by several Instances in the Sequel; It is again concluded, that Knights created at such solemn Festivals, in pursuance of such Summons, were of a different Degree of Knighthood, from Knights made in pursuance of Writs directed to the Sheriff; which was the Thing to be proved.

Notwithstanding this late Creation, about two Years, and six Months afterward, there were Thirty-two, others say, Thirty-four Knights of the Bath made, at the Coronation of this King.

The Serjeant of the Ewery, who had exercised the Office of a Barber, at the Gate of the Royal Palace, and enjoyed the Profits appertaining to that Office, preferred a Petition to the Crown, in the Twenty-fifth Year of this Reign; and, upon his Petition, that Employment was confirmed to him, and to another Person, with all appendent Advantages, together, as it is expressed in the Patent, with the Fees payable by those, who should be created Knights of the Bath; that is, "from every Knight twenty-four Ells of Linnen-cloth;"
"which was to be placed about the Bathing-Vessel; with a Tapet, or Carpet of red Worsted; and twenty Shillings for shaving him; forty Shillings from every Baron, or his Peer; one hundred Shillings from every Earl, or his Peer; and ten Pounds from every Duke, or his Peer, severally, on the same Account."

It hath been formerly observed, that in the Directions to the Wardrobe, for preparing Materials, at the Creation of these Knights, it is provided there should be a Distinction in the Habits, according to the different Qualities of the Candidates to be created Knights; and that, which was an Act of pure arbitrary Favour from the Crown, Habits of superior Distinction, should be given to Persons, for which their Quality could not, regularly, or directly, entitle them; and yet, on whom that Mark of Favour was conferred, as if they had been really, and actually, qualified by such Titles to receive it; which Remark may serve to render more intelligible the Meaning of the Specifications already mentioned, *tanquam pro Banneretto; tanquam pro Comite,* &c. whereby it might be imported, that these Persons were, on the Occasion, considered, as equal, or Peers; and accordingly, vested in such Habits, though they were not really and legally of the same Degree: and the same Remark may, in some measure, serve also to ex-

---

*See above, p. 27.*
plain these Entries, in the forecited Patent, Peers to a Duke, to an Earl, and to a Baron; to which it may be farther added, that though the eldest Son of a Duke hath no Claim to the Right of Peerage in Parliament; yet he is, by his Birth, entitled to precede an Earl; as the eldest Sons of Earls precede Barons; and therefore the Sons of the higher Nobility, with reference to this Degree of Knighthood, may be esteemed Peers to the lower Distinctions of Nobility; accordingly, the eldest Sons of the higher Nobility, invested with this Degree of Knighthood, paid Fees to the Heralds, in some stated Proportion, according to the Precedence due to their Birth: For example, the Son to the Marquess of Dorset paid fifty Shillings, upon his advancement to this Degree, at the Creation of Henry Duke of York, when the Barons, then promoted, paid only forty Shillings; and on Account of such Difference in the Habits, the Earl of Derby created Knight of the Bath, at the Coronation of Queen Anne Bullen, in compounding with the Heralds, paid a larger Sum, for his Robe, than the Lord Vaux paid, on the same Occasion; and Sir Thomas Howard, Son to the Earl of Surrey, made Knight of the Bath at the Coronation of Queen Mary, paid "Fees to the Officers of Arms, equal to those paid by the Lords, who were then also created.

---

1 Append. Numb. 59.  
3 Ibid. p. 153 b.
This Conjecture, which I have here made, and which is proposed only as a Conjecture, seems to me, at present, to give the most specious Account concerning the Distinction of Peers to Earls, and Peers to Barons: As to the other Branch of the Distinction in the Patent, Peers to Dukes, it may probably denote the younger Sons of the Blood-Royal, who might have this Dignity conferred on them, antecedently to their Creation, by Patent, to any determinate Title of Peerage. The three younger Sons, for Instance, of Henry the Fourth, were created Knights of the Bath, before any one of them was actually possessed of such Title of Peerage.

Upton, a Writer of great Knowledge, Reputation, and Authority, in Affairs relating to Heraldry, and the Rules of conferring Knighthood, flourished in this Reign; and he expressly recites this Method of creating Knights by Bathing, and gives a Description of a white Ensign [Stigma] as it may be rendered; which, he faith, the new-created Knight was to wear, till he should perform some gallant Exploit, in case no Lady, before that time, or when no opportunity for signalizing his Prowess might intervene, should, by a gentle Violence, pluck that Badge of Probation away from him. It is observable, that the Passage, upon which I am now reflecting, supposes, that the Wearing this

\[ 49 \]
white Ensign, was agreeable to the antient established Custom in England, and is, as he faith, particularly enjoined in the Ceremonial, "uti docet Consuetudo Angliae," to which may be added another memorable Circumstance from him, that this Knighthood was conferred, in Time of Peace, "ubi regnat Pax;" in which Observation he might probably have an Eye to the Title of the Treatise in the French Language hereafter quoted, and inserted in the Appendix, concerning the Form of creating Knights of the Bath. I shall also endeavour, in the Sequel, to prove, that this very Formulary hath in it certain Characters, which shew, it was compiled, and perhaps for some considerable Time before the Age, wherein Upton wrote.

We shall now proceed to the Facts, which I have thought most proper to select, in reference to the present Subject, that occur in the Reign of Edward IV, at whose z Coronation in June 1461, his Brothers, the Duke of Clarence, and Gloucester, were, with several other Persons of Distinction, created Knights of the Bath, in the Tower. The Duke of Clarence was then in the twelfth, and the Duke of Gloucester only in the ninth Year of his Age; the Former was a born in Ireland on the 22d of October 1449; the Younger, at Fodringay b on the 2d of October 1452; and, in the

---

a M.S. in Offic. Armor. inter Cod. Notf. n. 48. b Ibid.

Rites
[ 51 ]

Rites of this Ceremony, we have a specific Account of their wearing white silk Tokens, or Laces, on their Shoulders, besides their Gowns, and Hoods.

Scarce three Years were expired, before a new Creation was solemnized on occasion of Crowning the Queen-Consort, when two Noblemen of Gascoign had this Dignity conferred on them; a Dignity received with such Ostentation of State, and Magnificence, that a special Provision was made in the 4th Statute against giving Liveries, that it should not however extend to the Creation of Knights of the Bath.

In the 4th Regulation of the Household, settled by this King, there are References to the Fees, which arise, as due from the Knights of the Bath at their creation, both to the heraldick Officers, and to the Service of the Wait, who attended their Vigils.

This King, in the fifteenth Year of his Reign 1475, made a very magnificent Promotion of his two Sons, the Prince of Wales, and the Duke of York. The Prince had not, at that Time, completed the fifth Year of his Age, and the Duke is said by Mr. & Sanford to have been born on the 28th Day of May 1474, by others on the 17th of August 1472; at this Promotion Thomas Gray, then Earl of Huntingdon, the Son of the

---

c Appendix, Numb. 48.     d Appendix, Numb. 49.
e Appendix, Numb. 50.     f Appendix, Numb. 51.
Queen-Confbrt by her firft Husband, had the Knight-
hood of the Bath conferred on him, and after he was actually, and really invested with that Dignity, the King immediately created him Marquefs of Dorset; and then he had the Privilege of sitting at Dinner, in the Robes of that Estate, above the other Habits appropriated to the Degree of the Bath. At the same time, several Persons of the firft Distinction, and in the highest Favour at Court, were advanced to this Honour, whose Names will be found in the\textsuperscript{1} Appendix: But it ought here to be particularly observed, the King, at the Time of conferring this Honour upon them, did himself personally condescend to instruct them in the Nature and Duties of it; and this Precedent was followed in several\textsuperscript{k} Creations under the Reigns of succeeding Kings.

The Reader may likewise find in the\textsuperscript{1} Appendix, the Names of those who were created Knights of the Bath, when the Marriage of the Duke of York, the younger Son of Edward IV, with the Daughter and Heirefs of the Duke of Norfolk, was solemnized. The next Instrument regularly, in order of Time, should have been inserted before, under the fourth Year of this King's Reign; it reports the\textsuperscript{m} Sentence given against Sir Ralph Gray, by which he was degraded from his

\textsuperscript{i} Appendix, Numb. 51.\textsuperscript{l} Appendix, Numb. 56. 58, 59, 60.\textsuperscript{l} Appendix, Numb. 52.\textsuperscript{m} Appendix, Numb. 53.
Character, as Knight of the Bath; for he is so expressly stiled, in a Copy which I have, of the Proceedings in that Case, but which would, if transcribed here at length, take up a greater Space than my present Design of Brevity will allow: however, I shall occasionally observe, there is no Expression used, or any Intimation given of his Perjury and Doubling with Henry VI, as he is charged by the Memorial entered in the Year-Books of the Law. I have not yet been able to discover the determinate Time, when he was advanced to this Degree, but it is highly probable, it was at some Solemnity in the Reign of that Prince, to whose Cause he at last sacrificed his Life, Fortune, and Honour.

We come now to the Reign of Edward the Fifth, when a Design was formed, or rather an Appearance of such a Design projected by the Duke of Gloucester, who, during the King's Minority, was constituted Protector of the Realm, for the King's Coronation on the Twenty-second of June, and accordingly "Summons, bearing date on the Fifth of that Month, were issued immediately, and separately to such Persons, whose Names are recited in the Appendix, to appear at the Time appointed, that the Degree of Knighthood might be then conferred on them: In which Summons, no mention, indeed, is made of Knighthood of the Bath;
yet it is evident, that, Degree must have been here particularly intended, because Writs, dated on the twentieth Day of May, issued to all the Sheriffs of England, for obliging all Persons, whose Estates rendered them liable to be summoned for that End, to take the Degree of Knighthood; that is, of common or simple Knighthood upon them, on the eighth Day of June. This Writ, I say, to the Sheriffs, was dated on the twentieth Day of May; and as it bears a different Date, requires a different Return, and is directed to the Sheriffs, whose Authority only extended, and could only extend, in a legal Way, to summon Persons of full Age, who had Estates to the annual Value of forty Pounds, to accept simple or common Knighthood: We conclude, as in other Cases of the like circumstance, that the former Summons respected a different Degree of Knighthood, which could be no other, on any reasonable, or indeed any possible Supposition, than the Knighthood of the Bath: And what is here observed, will still be more fully confirmed by the Practice, upon the Accession of succeeding Princes to the Throne; from which it will appear, that besides the Writs issued to the Sheriffs in general, to oblige Persons qualified by their Tenures, to appear, and accept Knighthood, there were separate Summons sent immediately to Persons, who are therein expressly, and by Name designed to be crea-

_0 Above p. 24, 25, 26._
ted Knights of the Bath, at their respective Coronations.

But the Protector, whether he had originally any real Design, that his Nephew Edward the Fifth should be crowned at the Time appointed; or whether he only dissembled an Intention to that End, to amuse the People, to gain Time, or to render his Design less suspected, 'till they should be more ripe for Execution; whether he was actuated by any of these Motives, or by all of them, in giving Notice of the Time proposed for the King's Coronation; this is certain, that being instigated by a Spirit of Ambition, if a cruel, and bloody Attempt against all Obligations of Religion, of Honour, of natural Affection, and common Humanity, may be called by so soft a Name, he became soon resolved to prevent his Nephew's Coronation on the 22d of June, by previously taking Possession himself of the Throne, and that too in his own pretended Right, on the 18th of the same Month.

And as he had invaded the Crown, so, at his own Coronation, according to the usual Custom and Form, he exercised this Act of the Royal Prerogative in creating Knights of the Bath, and the Names of those created by him may be found, under the Reference here made to the p Appendix.

In the succeeding Reign of Henry VII, we shall produce Instances, from which it will appear, that at the Creation of Knights of the Bath, at different Times, there was much Solemnity, and several grand Rites used, which will afford Matter for useful, and curious Reflections. This potent and wise Prince, had so great a Notion concerning the Dignity of this Knighthood, that none of our Monarchs his Predecessors, or Successors, seem to have conferred it in a more solemn, exact, or magnificent Manner, or by more signal Acts of a personal Administration. At his Coronation, the young Duke of Buckingham was created Knight of the Bath, with several other great Personages. In the third Year of that Reign, when the Queen was crowned, there was the like Creation of Knights of the Bath, who were called by the Kings most Honourable Lettres to receyve the Order of Knighthood, and there it is immediately expressed, that they were created Knights of the Bath; whose Names, with those of the Esquires-Governours appointed to attend them, may be seen in the Appendix.

The King having an Intention to create Arthur, his eldest Son, Prince of Wales, he previously conferred on him the Knighthood of the Bath, on the 20th Day of December 1489, when his Age did not exceed

---

thereon three Years and three Months. We have a Catalogue of the Names of the Persons promoted at the same Time to this Degree, with a Detail of several Ceremonies, and Solemnities used on that Occasion; when the King created a Pursivant for this Prince, by the Title of Walingford, a Castle then belonging to the Prince in Right of his Dutchy of Cornwall; and we find a like Precedent by this King, when Knights of the Bath were created at his own Coronation; at which Time he instituted a Pursivant by the "Appellation of Rouge-dragon: and I have, in another Place, produced several Examples, to shew, that the Sovereigns of this Kingdom, having the Crown on their Heads, in all Royal State, frequently created, and conferred such Officers.

In the tenth Year of Henry VII, we have an Account of the Inveftiture of his younger Son, the Duke of York, (afterward Henry VIII,) with this Dignity, on the Eve before All Saints Day 1494, and the Names of the Persons who were at the same Time created, with their respective Esquires, are recited in the Appendix. It appears remarkable in this Ceremony, that the Lord William Courteney, Son of the Earl of Devon, who had himfelf been created Knight of the Bath in
the third Year of this Reign, should execute the Office of a young Esquire to this Prince; and that a particular Concession was made in favour of the Knights then created, by which they were "licensed to eat their meat, by cause byt was fastynge-day." Now, according to the Ceremonial, these Knights ought to have abstained from eating, if it had not been a Fastning-day; and therefore the Reasons of this Permission to eat, because it was a Fastning-day, I readily acknowledge, appear to me, at present, altogether unaccountable. This Prince having been born on the 28th of June 1491, was at this Time, in the same Year of his Age, with that of his Brother Arthur, when he was promoted to this Degree.

At the Celebration of Prince Arthur's Marriage, there was another Creation of Knights, whose Names are contained in the Appendix; and the Roll, already quoted, specifies Knights made at the Time, when, after his Death, the King's second Son, Henry, was created Prince of Wales; and here again it is acknowledged, the Roll doth not stile those Knights, expressly Knights of the Bath, but simply Knights, without any Addition; however, it may be reasonably inferred, that these were really Knights of the Bath, from the Solemnity of the Occasion, the Dignity of the Persons knight-

---

* Appendix, Numb. 57.  
* b Appendix, Numb. 60.  
* c Appendix, Numb. 61.  
* ed,
ed, and the Method of this Rolle, which only mentions Knights made on solemn Occasions, without specifying the particular Degree of Knighthood conferred on them, though they were, as it hath been proved, created Knights of the Bath; but there is no necessity of repeating continually, what hath been said in support of this Assertion.

Under the Reign of Henry VIII, there were two grand Occasions, the Former, at the Time of his own Coronation, the Other at that of his Queen Anne Bullen, when Knights of the Bath were severally created, whose Names are exhibited in their proper d Course. Sometime before his Demise, he designed to create his Son Edward, Prince of Wales, and proper Dispositions were made for that End; and, previously, he intended to confer the Knighthood of the Bath upon him; for which, suitable e Apparel was provided; but his Death prevented the Execution of that Design.

Several Persons of the first Quality were nominated, in order to their being regularly promoted to this Honour, at the Coronation of Edward VI; but by reason of some Accident, because the Time (as it is f expressed) was so short, the usual Ceremonies were, by Dispensation, omitted; and to supply that Omission, the King having the Crown on his Head, with greate

---

d Appendix, Numb. 62, 63.  
e Appendix, Numb. 64.  
f Appendix, Numb. 65.
Royaltie knighted them, having himself first received Knighthood from his Uncle the Protector, who was authorised by Letters Patent, under the Great, Seal to confer it.

Upon the Accession of Queen Mary to the Throne, a Commission was granted to the Earl of Arundel, empowering him to make Knights; but without any additional Title, within two Days after the Date of that Patent, which were the two Days preceding her Coronation; in pursuance hereof, we find the Names of the Knights created by him, according to the stated Form of creating Knights of the Bath, and the Variety of the Ceremonies then used, so distinctly related, that it particularly deserves to be consulted in the Appendix.

When Queen Elizabeth succeeded to the Crown, she granted the like Commission to the same noble Earl, "to do, and exercise everie thinge, and thinges on hir be-
" halfe to be done and exercisèd, for the full making of " Knights of the Bath, and of other Knights," so they are expressly distinguished. The Preamble to this Com-
mission recites, the Reasons upon which the Grant of it was made, and those Reasons are proposed in so good a Light, and supported on such good Grounds, that the Reader, in consulting them, will not find his

\[ 60 \]

\( g \) Appendix, Numb. 66.  \( b \) Appendix, Numb. 67, 68.  
\( i \) Appendix, Numb. 69.
Time disagreeably employed. The Names of the Persons advanced to this Dignity, in pursuance of the Commission, will be found in the proper Course in the \textit{k} Appendix.

In respect to these Commissions of our Queens-Regent, I have, in another \textit{1} Treatise, occasionally mentioned something relating to their Manner of conferring Knighthoods, upon which, I shall not now proceed to enlarge: neither shall I enquire, whether our Kings, who succeeded these two Queens, did not, implicitly, follow the like Method of Procedure, without reflecting, that such Commissions might be originally owing to the Difference of their Sex, or to certain Reasons of Decency, and Propriety, on that Account. A learned \textit{m} Jesuit, indeed, hath asserted, but upon what Authority I cannot conjecture, that \textit{Elizabeth} Queen of England, caused her self to be armed on the Day of her Coronation, to be Sovereign of the Orders of Knighthood in England; neither can I apprehend to what particular Rite, on the Occasion, he intended to refer, as performed by Queen \textit{Elizabeth}, personally, except that of putting on the Spurs, at the Time of her Coronation; the Propriety of which

\textit{k} Appendix, Numb. 70.
\textit{l} Introduct. to the Register of the Garter, p. 34.
\textit{m} Menestrié de la Chevalerie, p. 114. la Reine \textit{Elizabeth} d'Angleterre fe fit armer le jour de son couronnement pour eftre Chef des Ordres de Chevalerie d'Angleterre.
Ceremony, in this Case, I am not at leisure here to examine.

From the Ceremonial, as it is described, of the Creation in the Reign of Queen Mary, we learn, that the Candidates went into the Bath in Linnen-Drawers, or Breeches, according to the Rules of an antient Formulary; that the Queen, with her own Hands, tied on their Swords; which yet was not the determinate Action, that impressed the Character of Knighthood; but the Earl of Arundel formally and effectually conferred it, when he executed his Commission by giving the Acollade, or by laying his Hands upon the Shoulders of those, who were designed to be honoured with this Degree; concerning which Practice, it will be necessary to add some explanatory Remarks in the Sequel.

As Queen Elizabeth was never married, the Reasons of several publick Creations of Knights of the Bath, in former Reigns, did not subsist, during the Time of her Reign; which continuing above forty-five Years, she (as it is asserted) survived all the Knights, eleven in Number, upon whom this Honour had been conferred at her Coronation.

When King James was crowned, he promoted sixty-two Persons to this Dignity; and in the second Year

\[62\]
of his Reign, his younger Son, then in the 4th Year of his Age, was invested with this Degree, previous to his being created Duke of York.

It was allowed, that Knights of the Bath ought to have Precedency of all Knights-Batchilers, though in order of Time knighted before them in this Reign: But some Knights-Batchilers, formerly created, claimed a Right of preceding them: This Contest occasioned a very elaborate and curious Treatise by Mr. Thinne, Lancaster-Herald, in answer to the Arguments alleged by the Knights-Batchilers, who insisted on that pretended Right; a Treatise that very well deserves to be made publick; and according to the Argument of which, the Precedency was determined, as rightfully belonging to Knights of the Bath.

In the tenth Year of his Reign 1610, when his eldest Son Henry, was to be created Prince of Wales, there was a general Promotion made of the Knights of the Bath, though this Prince himself, it is confessed, never had this Degree actually conferred on him; the Reason of which particular Exception to the general Rule, in respect to Princes, especially to the first Prince of the Blood, most probably was, that Knighthood might have been conferred on him at the Time of his

9 Appendix, Numb. 74.
7 Appendix, Numb. 73;
G. 2. refers me, p. 196, &c.
Baptism
Baptism, according to the "antient Custom of Scotland, when "he was crowned and created Prince and "Great Steward of Scotland, Duke of Rosay, Earl of "Carrick, Lord of the Ilis, and Baron and "Knight of "Renfrew."

And because different Writers frequently remark the Rites observ’d in publick Solemnities, after a different Manner, so that we frequently find several Circumstances particularly related by one of them, which are only in general transiently mentioned, or perhaps wholly omitted by another, I thought it might not be improper to refer the Reader to several different Narratives, concerning that particular Solemnity, which is the Subject of our present Inquiry: But I have not now an opportunity to examine, whether the Order of Precedency, in the Return of this Procession, as related by Mr. Stow, was perfectly agreeable to ancient Usage.

Upon the Death of Prince Henry, his Brother Charles Duke of York (afterwards Charles the First) was, with much Solemnity, created Prince of Wales, when several Persons were promoted to the Knighthood of the Bath, and there was the like Investiture after his Suc-

---

u See Scotichron. I. 16. c. 6. which was also the Practice in France. Annotat. sur l'Hist. de Ch. 6. p. 532, and in Burgundy, Pont. Heuter. l. 15. Rer. Burgund.

y Appendix, Numb. 75, 76, 77, 78.
z Appendix, Numb. 79.
cession to the *Crown in *February 1625. In the End of the Year 1637, he *appointed that his eldest Son the Prince, afterwards *Charles King of *England, the Second of that Name, should, on the thirty-first Day of *May following, be advanced to this Dignity, before his Election into the Fellowship of the *Garter, and the *Register of that Order mentions his Election on that very Day, but seems, indeed, to imply, that the Degree of Knight-Batchiler, only, was then conferred on him.

Soon afterward the Rebellion and Civil War broke out, putting all Things in a State of the utmost Disorder: and although the very Title of the Formulary seems to imply, that this Degree of Knighthood was only to be conferred in Time of Peace; yet, if what is asserted by a *French Writer of Character, upon Subjects of Nobility, Titles, and other Adjuncts of Honour, may be of any Authority, *James Duke of *York, afterward King of *England, and the Second of that Name, was created Knight of the *Bath. But he was certainly elected Companion of the *Garter at *York, on the 20th of *April 1642, the Morning after the last annual Festival of St. *George, celebrated before the Restoration of King *Charles the Second, upon which that Monarch restored this Dignity of Knighthood of the *Bath.

---

*a Appendix, Numb. 82.*  
*b Appendix, Numb. 82.*  
*c Appendix, Numb. 82.*  
*d De la Roque Traite de la Nobleffe, p. 351.*  

K and,
and, previously to his being crowned, created sixty-eight Knights of that Denomination.

III. The Dignity of this Degree may, in general, be concluded, from the pious, the beneficial, and other most excellent Ends of its Institution, which have been already specified: But that we may be able to form still a more adequate, and distinct Judgement in the Case, it may be convenient to proceed upon a summary Consideration of the following Particulars, concerning the solemn Times, Places, and Rites of conferring it, as well as Persons, on whom it hath been peculiarly conferred.

1. Our Monarchs, to do the greater Honour to this Degree, and which may serve to give us a more just Idea concerning the Dignity of it, have chosen the most publick, the most splendid, and joyful Occasions for creating Knights of the Bath. This Act of Royal Grace hath been usually display’d upon the Coronation, and Marriage of our Kings; the Coronation of both Queens-Regents and Queens-Consorts; the Birth, and Marriage of the Royal Issue, and their first Advance-ment to Honours; upon the designed Expeditions by our Kings against their foreign Enemies; upon Installations into the Most Noble Order of the Garter,

e Append. Numb. 84.
and when some grand Anniversary-Festivals were celebrated.

2. The Place, where our Princes have conferred this Honour, was always inseparably, and necessarily annexed, on that Occasion, to the Palace, or within the Verge of the Court, where they resided. And for the greater Solemnity of their Action in conferring it, and to shew the high Importance, and Design of it, the Ceremonies, so far as they respected the Ends of Religion, were solemnized in some Chappel or Church dedicated to the Honour, and appropriated to the Worship of God.

3. But besides these Circumstances of Time, and Place, both which are, without doubt, designedly adapted to the Nature of the Action performed in them; the Manner of creating Knights of the Bath, hath several Things in it of more peculiar Consideration, which may be proper still to heighten our Esteem for so antient, and honourable an Institution.

The moral Signification of the several Rites used in creating Knights of the Bath, will be considered under a distinct Section in the Sequel. What I shall at present observe, concerning those Rites, only relates to the Lustre, the Importance, and Number of them. In the former respect, they participate with several Ceremonies immemorially used at the Coronation of our Kings; such are the Bath, the Buskins, the Coif, the Spurs.
Spurs, the Gloves, the Sword, the Oath, the Robes, &c. and probably from thence, as Circumstances varied, these particular Usages, in reference to the Creation of these Knights, did originally take their Rise, and Direction; and consequently, if any Objection should therefore be pretended against them, such Objection would be founded, not in their Want of Splendor, and Dignity, but rather in their exceeding on these Accounts.

The Importance of these Rites, is not less considerable. The personal Administration of the King, when he is present, or at least his virtual Presence under some delegated Authority, in assisting at the Ceremonial by a Train of Actions, peculiar to his Royal Majesty, necessarily contribute to augment the State and Grandeur of the Solemnity; and the great Officers of the Sovereign's Household, received the Candidates to be created Knights of the Bath, at their first coming to the Court, who were afterwards successively conducted through a Ceremonial, as we shall presently see, of a various, and elaborate Process.

I need not here proceed to shew, that in proportion, as greater Solemnities are used, in the Designation of a Person to any Office, the more Honour is always, upon a natural Presumption, intended to be done to him, when such Office is conferred. If this be a known Rule, in ordinary Promotions to any Civil Character, or Employment, it will hold still stronger,
ger, when such Ceremonies are performed, which al-
lude principally to those, that have been celebrated,
when Sovereign Princes were invested with the Rights
of their Regalities; or such, as have some visible Relation
to any sacred, and instituted Rite, or Rites of re-
ligious Worship.

It may be proper therefore to take notice, that the
greater Ceremony, from which the Knighthood of the
Bath is denominated; and which, we must therefore
suppose, was instituted with a peculiar Design of re-
presenting the Dignity of it, hath the like Foundation,
as to the moral Design of it, with the great, and sa-
cred Ordinance, by which we are initiated into the
Faith, and Profession of our Holy Religion. And it
is not improbable, that as Bathing was intended, in
the allegorical Construction of it, to denote the inward
Purgation and future Purity of the Mind; so, the Oc-
casion of applying it, in that Sense, might be origi-
nally taken from a Consideration of the baptismal
Grace, and Efficacy; for the Origin of this civil In-
stitution may, for the Reason here mentioned, be much
more probably derived from the Christian Religion,
than from the Lustrations of the Heathens, with whom,
it is yet allowd, Bathing was used, as one of their re-
ligious Solemnities.

The Distinction, indeed, or proper Character of all
Things is known, and can only be known by the dif-
ferent Forms, under which Things appear: There is
no other Reason to be assigned of the different Degrees of Nobility, but from the different Manner, according to which Nobility was at first originally created, or hath been since successively derived: Were it not for certain external Signatures, whereby Persons and Things are known from other Persons and Things, there could be no particular or distinct Knowledge, in either respect.

But of all Distinctions, none are more visibly adapted, and universally understood to represent, or signify, what is intended by them, than those, which are known by different Habits: It is therefore a received Maxim, "The Quality, and Dignity of the Person to be distinguished, is demonstrated from the different Habit appropriated to him." And for this Reason, I may, on some future Occasion, descend to a more particular Consideration of the Robes, and other Marks of Distinction appropriated to Knights of the Bath, with some occasional Remarks, concerning the particular Reasons of such Appropriations; contenting my self, at present, by adding, that in the Church of Wath in Yorkshire, upon the Monument of Sir John Norton, created Knight of the Bath at the Marriage of Prince Arthur, and who died on the 28th of August 1520. He was represented by his Portraiture, having over his Armour, the Mantle, and Gloves hanging thereat, as

---

f G. 2. pennes me, p. 214 b. they
they were used at the Time of his Creation, and with a Cross upon each Knee, which will be hereafter explained.

I shall only make transient Mention here, that these Robes were delivered by the King's special Warrants, at the Expence of the Crown, as an additional Circumstance, to shew another considerable Character of Distinction, in respect to the Dignity, and Honour of this Degree; and I shall here incidentally take the Liberty of repeating, that as a Mark of a more honoary Impress upon this Act of Royal Grace, Knights of the Bath are summoned, in order to their Creation, by the King's Letters, or special Missive Writs immediately directed to them for that Purpose.

As the greater Solemnity of any particular Ceremony doth, according the Tenour of the foregoing Argument, demonstrate the greater Dignity of the Action, to which such Ceremony is appropriated; so the Dignity of such Action must necessarily be presumed to arise in proportion, as a greater Number of solemn concurring Circumstances is previously required to the Performance of it: The Rule in this Case, The more Ceremony, the more State, needs no Comment; especially, where the Sovereign himself appears, or is understood to appear in all the Splendor, and Majesty of the State-Royal: And therefore, though all Honour is ultimately derived from him, as the sole Fountain of Honour; yet, every Dignity conferred by him, receives

[ 71 ]
ceives an additional Lufter, as it is more expressive, or understood to be more expressive, of the Royal Favour, from the Circumstances of conferring it.

I come now to make some Reflections upon the Manner and Act of conferring this Knighthood; and it will appear, there hath not been any Method, or Form of Rites in conferring Knighthood in any Age, or any Part of the World, wherein one Ceremony or other was used, which separately conveyed Knighthood of a different Kind, that is not particularly, and conjunctly retained in conferring the Knighthood of the Bath; such was the Investiture with the Military Belt, the Cincture of the Sword, the Placing the Spurs, the Blow upon the Neck, the Acolade, with the Embracing, and Kiss of Peace. Indeed, the Ceremony, by which Bannerets were created, in cutting the Guidon into the Form of a Square, could not, with any Propriety, be used in creating Knights of the Bath, as it was a Military Action always performed in Time of War, where Banners were displayed.

The Time to which I have confined myself, doth not permit me to explain these several Methods of conveying Knighthood in distinct Ages, and Countries: But, to satisfy the Curiosity of those, who may have a Desire to know, what is the precise, and determinate Action, by which Knighthood of the Bath is ultimately, and compleatly conveyed, I shall take the present
present Occasion to repeat, that the Action which fully and finally impresses the Character of Knighthood in this Degree, is, the Blow given with the Hand upon the Neck or Shoulder. The Reader by the Reference in the Margin, will find, that it hath been controverted between some foreign Writers, whether the Stroke, which impressed the Character of Knighthood, was heretofore given with a Sword, or by the bare Hand upon the Neck.

At the Creation of Knights of the Bath, it was also usual to make simple Knights, or Knights-Batchi-lers; which was done solely by the Stroke with a Sword, who are therefore, in some Ceremonials, termed Knights of the Sword; and in others, Knights of the Carpet. And it should not be omitted, that Persons of the greatest Quality, and particularly a Son of the King of Portugal, have taken upon them that Degree, on the Occasion, when Knights of the Bath were created. And it is accordingly observable, that in the Commissions issued for creating Knights of the Bath, previous to the later Coronations, there was a Clause, which not only gave Powers to that End, but also to make, and ordain other Persons Knights.

---

a Claudius, C. 3. in Bibl. Cotton in several Places.
b Usually to be found in the Lijf.
c Append. Numb. 43. d Append. Numb. 69, 72, &c.
The Knighthood of the Bath being more antient than any of the Religious, or Civil Military Orders, which were not founded before the Twelfth Century; there are good Grounds to infer, that several Rites in those Orders might, in succeeding Times, owe their Origin to this Institution: And it might be a proper Subject of Enquiry, whether there is any one of these Orders that was not primarily formed upon the Model of it. As to the Religious Military Orders, it is evident, the Method of admitting a Member into the Fraternity of the Knights-Hospitalers, one of the most antient Societies of this kind, had an apparent Assimilation with the Rites used in constituting a Knight of the Bath. And as the Ceremonies in creating Knights of the Bath, seem to be derived, in several Respects, from the Forms used in the Coronations of our Sovereigns; so several Princes, from this Institution of Knighthood, have probably taken Hints, or certain exemplary Projects, upon which they have erected their Civil Military Orders. I shall not enter upon a particular Discussion, whether even the royal and magnificent Founder of the most Noble Order of the Garter, might not, in certain Instances, copy from this Precedent; but I shall confine my self, at presant, to what appears, at first sight, to have been somewhat singular

---

e In the Introd. to the Register of the Garter, p. 63.
a Menen. Dilic, Equefr. p. 72.
in the Ritual of this Degree of the Bath; namely, that every young Knight should wear a white Silk Lace on his Left Shoulder, 'till it should be taken off by the Hand of the Prince, or of some noble Lady, upon his having performed some brave and considerable Action: which might give Rise to the Institution of an Order of Knighthood, from the Badge proper to it, denominated the Knot; and this Knot was to be worn by the Companions "untied," till they had respectively done some such signal Military Exploit.

In the former Ages of Gallantry, Knights obliged themselves, by Vows, to perform Feats of Arms; and as a visible Test of their Prowess and Resolution, made choice of some particular Ensign, a Bracelet about the Arm, a Chain about one of their Legs, or some other Device of like nature; first tied on with great Ceremony by the Hand of some beautiful Lady, and worn as the Signal of a Challenge to all Persons, termed, in the Language of that Time, an Emprise; as, upon the Performance of that Vow, the same Badge was likewise taken off by a Lady; which Action was called Deliverer de sa Emprise, and probably the Word Enterprize may owe its Etymology to this Practice.

---

The taking this Silk Lace off the Knights of the Bath by a Lady, is the more observable, as to defend and protect Virgins and Widows was a Duty incumbent on them, by vertue of their Oath; and therefore it might not be improper, that they should be despoiled of this Badge by so soft, and pleasing a Violence. But, that the Ladies might still do greater Honour to the Knights, who were the Objects of this Favour, Tilts and Tournaments were ordinarily appointed on the Solemnities, in which Knights of the Bath were created; and when they were to make a Trial of their Strength and Skill, which by the Monkish Writers, and Historians, are termed Tyrocinia, probatory Martial Exercises, wherein the Ladies were generally appointed Judges, and distributed honorary Rewards to the Combatants, according to the different Proofs of their Strength, Art, and Activity; the Discussion of which particular Articles would require too great a Compass in this Place, and therefore I must dismiss that Enquiry to another Opportunity; as also the Consideration of the Badge granted to the Knights of the Bath, by which they are distinguish'd, being Three Crowns, the Arms ascribed to King Arthur.

4. The other Method of making an Estimate concerning the Dignity of any Honour, is, from the Character of the Persons, on whom it hath been peculiarly conferr'd. Our Kings themselves, who had not been knighted before their Accession to the Sovereign Authority,
thority, have formally taken this Knighthood upon them, at the same time with the Crown; the Princes of the Blood Royal, foreign Princes, young Gentle-
men of the highest Nobility, and first Distinction for their Birth, Quality, and personal Merit, have been the proper and select Objects of this Royal Grace: Instances whereof may be found in the Appendix.

5. Concerning the allegorical Construction of the Ceremonies used throughout the whole Process of conferring this Dignity, and the mystical Signification of the particular Make, and different Colours of the Materials, which are expressly enjoin'd by the Formulary, whereof I promised to give some Account: I shall now curiously remark, that the Humour of former Ages disposed them to be very particular and prolix in the Explication of Forms. I have in another place observed, how far the Rites relating to the Fashion and Colour of the Ensigns used by the Knights of the Garter, have been moraliz'd; and in reference to the present Subject, shall take notice, that the most learned Mr. b Selden, for the Proof of Bathing, cites an old Book, describing the Game of Cheffe, translated by Caxton, without assigning the Time when the Writer of that Book lived. A Transcript of which I have, in Deference to Mr. Selden's Authority, inserted from a c Translation of it into the French Language; for

---

a Introd. to Register of the Garter, p. 112, 120.  
b Titles of Honour, p. 456.  
c Appendix, Numb. 87, from a very fair MS. in the Hands of Mr. Woodward the Bookseller.
the Book is said to have been written originally in Latin, and even this French Translation being dedicated to John Duke of Normandy, eldest Son of Philip King of France, it follows, that it must have been made in the Interval between the 17th of February, 1331, when the Title of that Dutchy was conferr'd on him, and the Time of his Accession to the Throne by the Demise of his Father on Aug. 22, 1350.

Bathing, from whence these Knights took their Appellation, represents the a Purgation of the Person bathed from Sin, and from all Kind of moral Impurity; as a Person, by Baptism, is sanctified by a Principle of inward and spiritual Grace.

After Bathing, he is put into a new and clean Bed, to denote that perfect and sedate Composure of Mind, with which a Course of virtuous Achievements, in his new Military State, is to be finally rewarded.

After he hath for some time repos'd himself, Robes of Crimson, or Red Tartarin were deliver'd to him; by which significant Rite and Ornament he is instruct-ed, that the Duty of his new Military Office requires, he should, for the Service of the Christian Religion, and for the Church, be ready to expose himself, whenever there may be just Occasion, to the greatest Diffi-

---

a See Appendix, Numb. 86, 87, for the Proofs of these Allegories. Camden's Britan. p. 124. juxta vas balnearium linteis opertum, in quo cum se Deo commendaverint, se ablunt, ut deinceps corpore, animoq; mundo esse admonenteur, &c.
culties and Dangers; though such as may occasion the shedding of his Blood: And these Robes are guarded, lined, or edged with white Silk, as emblematical of that immaculate Honour, which, in virtue of his Knighthood, he is inviolably obliged to preserve and maintain.

The Chausses femellees, or Black Stockings foaled with Leather, are intended, as several other Materials of that Colour, in the Allegorical Construction of them, for a Document of Humility; reminding him of his first Extraction, in respect to his mortal, and material Part, the Earth, out of which his Body was originally formed, and into which it must sometime certainly be resolved.

His Spurs denote his Ardour, Forwardness, and Activity in the Pursuit of Military Adventures, and Honour; and particularly, a ready and cheerful Obedience to any superior Command, such as himself should think reasonable to be obey'd without Scruple or Regret, by those, over whom he might be placed in any Degree of Authority; especially, where Circumstances would not admit Dispute or Delay. And here I am to remark, that according to the Heraldick System, Spurs are carried, among other Trophies, at the Funeral of a Knight of the Bath; a Privilege not allowed to any other Person, under the Degree of a Baron, except only to Bannerets, and in later times, to Colonels of Horse.
His white Girdle or Belt, represents the Vertue of Chastity, not in Opposition to Marriage, but to "im-pure and criminal Love, which Knights ought particularly to detest, as being the avow'd Guardians of Female Vertue and Honour.

The Ceremonial directs, that the Lords, who by the Sovereign's Appointment, shall put on the Spurs, do likewise make the Sign of the Cross on each Knee of the Knight; and several Monuments of Knights of the Bath were lately, if not still remaining, having Crosses placed in this manner upon their Knees.

The Sword is design'd as a Token of the Knights declaring open Defiance to the Devil, and of his resolving to defend Religion, and the Duties of his Calling, with all Vigour and Constancy; particularly, to undertake the Protection and Defence of Poor Men against the Rich, and of weak Men against the Strong.

The Coife, white Covering, and white Hat upon the Head, imports, in the moral Design of it, that as a Knight is under indispensible Obligations, in vertue of his Character and Function, to perform good and commendable Works; so he ought to preserve a pure Con-science before God, and should be careful never to do, never to design any thing, for which his Mind may inwardly challenge or reproach him.

---


\( b \) See Du Fresne Gloss. v. Cingulo militari decorare.

The
The Blow on the Neck is intended, as a *Memorial to him, that he ought not to be insensible of any real Indignity, or Affront; that Honour is a tender Point; and no Impressions are sooner felt, or ought to be longer retained, than those whereby any Person suffers in his Character, as a Man of Honour.

This Account of the mystick Signification, in giving the Blow, is agreeable to the Opinion, which hath prevailed in later Times. But since learned Men have made different Conjectures, about the Origin of it, as I have in another *Place observ’d, it may be convenient to propose some of them, which have been thought most specious, to the Reader, that he may judge for himself, concerning the Propriety of them. There are Authors, who have derived this Blow from the Stroke given by the Romans per vindictam, with the Rod, upon any Person, in his receiving Manumission: Others have deduced it from the Stroke, that the Bishops frequently gave to Persons confirmed by them: Others contend it was given upon the Creation of a Knight.

---

2. Lambertus Ardenis Hist. Com. Guifn. qui vixit sub Philippo Augusto, In die Sanetio Pentecostes ei Militarem, non repercudiendus, dedit alam, & militaribus eum in virum perfectum dedicavit sacramentis. In that Age, the Historians observ’d not the strict Rules of Grammar; and it being evident from the whole Passage, that the Words, non repercudiendus, must refer to the new-created Knight; it may not be unreasonable to guess, that the true Reading ought to be non repercuiendo; more especially, since this Signification of that Stroke is remembered by other Writers. Thus in the Appendix, Numb. 86. at the Knighting of Ildefon, this Advice is particularly given him.

a. Introduction to the Register of the Garter. Other Authors have attributed it to the ancient Adoptions per arma.
with such Violence, that he should, by the sensible Impression of it, be more powerfully, and permanently reminded of his Profession; which Opinion appears consonant to an antient Custom of the Romans, transmitted from them to the Germans, of giving a Blow to a Person, who might be called upon to attest any Thing in Evidence, that had happened at the Time, when the Blow was given, or was for some special Reason to be particularly remembred; several Instances of which Practice are collected by \( b \) Du Fresne; to which may be added, it was customary in the \( c \) Northern Parts of Europe, when the Priest put the Ring upon the Bride's Finger, for those, who assisted at the Marriage, to give themselves such Strokes, the more effectually to remember the Solemnization of it. After such Instances, I need not make an Apology for observing, there is, in many places, a Custom of the like Nature observed in our annual Perambulations, in order to determine, and ascertaın to our respective Parishes, their true Bounds, and proper Claims of Right, by such Treatment of young Persons, as may ever after cause them to remember the Occasion of it. Some Ceremonials of Knighthood presuppose, indeed, another Reason for this Rite of the Blow, and say, it was appointed in \( d \) Memory of our Saviour's being buff-

---

\( b \) Gloss. v. auris, alapa.  
\( c \) Olaus Magnus, l. 14.  
feted, and smitten for our Offences. This Blow was probably given on the Back of the Shoulder, or Neck, that the Person, who received it, should continually remember, that he ought never to give an Enemy the Opportunity, upon his flight from the Battle, of striking him in the same Place. There is another Account, concerning the Origin of this Ceremony, which I shall barely mention, without any Remark; namely, that it was derived from the Sword, when the Military Oath was taken by the Soldiers, under the Roman Emperor Julian, Gladio cervicibus admoto, mentioned by Marcellinus.

However this may be, yet, it ought not to be dissembled, that not only the Monarchs of this Nation, but several foreign Princes have also, in former Ages, upon extraordinary Occasions, conferred Knighthood by Bathing. And since we may receive several considerable Informations concerning the Rites, and Import of these Rites, from the Methods used by them, I thought proper to insert some Precedents in the Appendix of such foreign Creations. In 1350, Robes were prepared for the Knighthood of the Dauphin, in which he was to perform his Vigils, with Coverings also for his Bed, and Coats of Arms to be set up in the Chamber, with several other Materials. The Method

---

\[ e \text{ Cafeneuve v. Accolée.} \quad g \text{ Lib. 21.} \\
\[ f \text{ Caffelit Variar. I. 1. c. 8.} \quad b \text{ Du Fresne, Gloff v. Myles.} \]
of conferring this Knighthood, by the King of France, upon Lewis King of Sicily, in May 1385, by Bathing, and other Ceremonies, corresponding with those used in this Realm, is so noble and solemn, that unless I had been confined so much to Time, I ought to have made a Version of it. This Practice was likewise upon grand Occasions observed in Italy, whereof Instances will be found in the Appendix, and which, in Truth, should have been, but for the same Restraint, rendered in English: And as to Spain, Mr. Selden hath already told us, what the antient Customs of that Nation were, in this Respect; and he takes it for granted, that our Edward the First, was there knighted in this Manner: Several curious Observations might be drawn from these Narratives, which must be postponed to another Time.

The antient Ceremonial, both in the French and the old English Language, wherein the Rites of conferring this Degree are exhibited, will enable us to form the most clear and distinct Notions concerning the Reason, and End, upon which they were appointed. The French Ceremonial, indeed, hath been already printed by Bisße, in his Notes upon Upton; but either the Copy, from which he transcribed, was faulty; or he was not so careful, and exact, as he ought to have been

i Appendix, Numb. 85.
k Appendix, Numb. 86.
l Tides of Honour, 1. 2. c. 4. § 8.
in transcribing. * Mr. Selden hath referred us to a Formulary in the same Language, which he supposeth, was not more antient, than the Reign of Henry VII. It is probable, he did not meet with any Copy that was extant, though there were certainly several latent Copies of it, written before that Time. There are still some Copies remaining, which, by the " Characters, seem to be of much greater Antiquity. 0 Mr. Thimne, a good Judge of such Matters, refers to one in his own Custody, written under the Reign of Edward III; and it hath been already hinted, that p Upton, who wrote in the Reign of Henry VI, might, in all probability, refer to this Ceremonial, as extant in his Age: To which may be added, that the whole Process contained in this French Formulary, hath all the Characters, or proper Marks of a more early Composition: It corresponds exactly with the Preparations in the Accounts of the Wardrobe; and it is observable, that in the Article concerning the Fees due to the Barber, it specifies only such, which are to be paid by an Earl, Baron, Banneret, or Knight. The Fees, indeed, as due from the Degree of Dukes, are therein omitted; which Omission, if it should not be allowed as a just Consequence, that this Instrument is more antient, than

---

m Titles of Honour, l. 2. c. 5. n. 45.

n There is one such Copy in the Cotton Library, and another in my Custody.

p 35.

0 Advocate and Anti-Advocate, MS.

p See above, p. 52.
the Erection of the Ducal Dignity in this Kingdom; yet, we may reasonably conclude, it was framed before the twenty-fifth of Henry VI, when the Fees of the respective Degrees were confirmed to the Barber, and the Fees for a Duke particularly expressed, and determined to be in a duplicate Proportion to those of an Earl; and in several later Copies of this French Ceremonial, these Fees, due from a Duke, are mentioned. Bysshe, and Dugdale in his Warwickshire, have severally exhibited, in Sculpture, the Method of conferring this Degree; the original Drawings, from whence these Sculptures were taken, are now in the Possession of his Grace the Duke of Montagu: In them, several of the Esquires, as there represented, have, about their Necks, a Collar of white Roses, with a white Lyon pendent to it, which I have observed in another Place, was the Collar, and Badge used by the Domesticks of Edward the Fourth. But if Henry VII, permitted his Queen-Consort to give her Servants the Badge, used by her Father Edward IV, then this Sculpture may be the Picture referred to in the Appendix, which represented the Manner of creating Knights of the Bath, at her Coronation.

I had a Design to add explanatory Notes upon the Ceremonial, towards discovering more fully the Nature

---

9 Appendix, Numb. 45.
7 Introduction to the Register of the Garter, p. 119.
f Appendix. Numb. 57.
of the Rites required, and the Meaning of several Terms therein contained; but the Printing of those Notes, was not practicable, within the Time limited for the Publication of this Essay. However, to express in some Degree, my most grateful, and dutiful Acknowledgement to the Earl Marshal, whose Fees are expressed in this Ceremonial, I cannot omit to remark, that these Fees do not depend upon the Authority of this Formulary, but are grounded upon an immemorial Usage, and as such, confirmed expressly by the Statute-Law of this Realm, and frequently recited in the "Records, and by our "Historians.

These are the Facts, which I have at present thought necessary to produce; and the Reader may be assured, they have been faithfully cited, and that due Care hath been used, not to misrepresent the Sense, or Design of the Authors, or Instruments, from which they were taken: But as to the Observations, which have been occasionally made upon those Facts, though it is hoped, notwithstanding the short Time, wherein this imperfect Scheme of an History hath been drawn up, I have not committed any material, and I am sure, cannot be charged with any wilful Mistake, in deducing

\[ \text{Stat. Westm. 2. c. 42.} \]
\[ \text{See Prinn. on 4th Inst. p. 74. and at the Coronation of Queen Alianor, the red Book of the Exchequer informs us, that Gilbert Earl of Strigul, then Marshal, Recepit autem de quolibet Barone facto milite a Rege, & quolibet Comite ea die Palfridum cum fella.} \]
\[ \text{See the Claim in Mat. Paris, under 35 Hen. 3. p. 830.} \]
them; yet, if it should, in Time future, appear, that I have really drawn any false, or even precarious Inference on any Account, from the Authorities, on which my Arguments have been founded, I desire to reserve a Liberty to my self of correcting such Error, and of proposing the Matter in Question in a more true and convenient Light.
COLLECTION
OF
AUTHORITIES

Referred to in the
INTRODUCTION.

NUMB. I.

Malmsbury l. 2. c. vi. de Regibus.

Anno Dom. 871. Nam & avus ejus Alfredus prospe-
rum ei regnum olim imprecatus fuerat; videns & gra-
tiose complexus speciei spectatæ puerum, & geftuum
elegantiam; quem etiam premature militem fecerat, donatum
Chlamyde coccinea, gemmato baltheo, ense Saxonico cum vagi-
na aurea.

NUMB. II.


Quoniam Anglorum erat consuetudo, quod qui militiae legiti-
mæ conscribendus esset, vespere præcedente diem sua conscripa-
tionis ad Episcopum, Abbatem, Monachum, vel Sacerdotem
aliquem contritus, & compunctus de omnibus suis peccatis con-
fessionem faceret, & absolutus, orationibus & devotionibus &
afflictionibus deditus, in Ecclesia pertoctaret, in castello quoq;
missem auditurus, gladium super altare offerret, & post Evangel-
ium Sacerdos benedictum gladium collo militis cum bene-
dictione imponeret, & communicatus ad eandem missem facris
A Chrifti
Chrifti myfteriis denuo miles legitimus permaneret. Hanc consœcrandi militis consuetudinem Normanni abominantes non militem legitimum talem tenebant, sed socordem equitem, & Quiritem degenerem deputabant.

NUMB. III.


1. 1. ad A. D. 1127.

Gaufredus, Fulconis Comitis Andegavorum, post Jerusalemium Regis, filius, adolescentiae primavo flore vernans, quinde-cim annorum factus est. Henricus primus Rex Anglorum unicam ei filiam lege Connubii jungere afferat. Regia voluntas Fulconi in petitionibus suis innotescit. Ipse Regis petitionem effectui se mancipaturum gratulans. Datur utrinque fides, & res sacramentis firmata, omnem dubietatis scrupulum tollit. Ex præcepto infuper Regis exadlum est a Comite, ut filium suum, nondum militem, ad ipfam immen-
tem Pentecostem Rothomagum honorifice mitteret, ubi ibidem cum eo aquavis arma susceperur, regaliis gaudiiis interesset. Nulla in his obtinendis fuit difficultas: Jufta enim petitio facilem retur ad Comite; ut filium suum, nonnullum militem, ad ipfam immensen
tem Pentecostem Rothomagum honorifice mitteret, ubi ibidem cum eo aquavis arma susceperur, regaliis gaudiiis interesset. Nulla in his obtinendis fuit difficultas: Jufta enim petitio facilem retur ad Comite; ut filium suum, nonnullum militem, ad ipfam immensen
tem Pentecostem Rothomagum honorifice mitteret, ubi ibidem cum eo aquavis arma susceperur, regaliis gaudiiis interes-

NUMB. IV.

Job. Salisb. de nugis Curial. l. 6. c. x. Inolevit consuetudo solemnis, ut ea ipsa die, qua quisque militari cingulo decoratur, Ecclesiam solemniter adeat, gladioque super altare posto, & oblato, quasi celebri professione facta, ferplum obsequio Altaris devoveat, & gladii, id est officii sui jugem Deo spondeat famulatum.

Ibid. c. xiii. Sunt autem plurimi, qui malorum clamore operum quando Militiae confecrando cingulum altari obtulerunt, videntur protestari se co tunc animo accessisse, ut altari, & ministris ejus, sed & Deo, qui ibi colitur, bellum denuntiarent.

NUMB. V.


NUMB. VI.

Petri Blefens. Epift. 94. Olim se juramenti vinculo milites obligabant, quod statent pro Reipub. statu, quod in acie non fugerent, & quod vita propriae utilitatem publicam perhaberent. Sed & hodie Tirones enfes suos perciipient de altari, ut profiteantur se filios Ecclesiae, atq; ad honorem facerdotii, ac tutionem pauperum, ad vindictam malefaetorum, & patria liberationem se gladium accepisse; porro res in Contrarium verfa eft, nam ex quo hodie militari cingulo decorantur, statim infurgunt in Christos Domini, & dehaviunt in patrimonium Crucifixi.

NUMB. VII.

Magn. Rot. 6 Job. rot. 16. Et pro tribus robis de Scarletto & tribus de viridi & ii Baldekinis & i culisita & aliis necessariis ad faciendum unum militem xxxiiii l.
Salutem. Præcipimus tibi, quod facias habere Thorns, ... & unum par loianorum, & capam ad pluviam, & unam culcitram, & unum par lintheorum, quando ipse fieri miles. Et quod in his posueris, computabitur tibi ad Scaccarium. Tefte meipso apud Bridfolk xviii die Julii anno regni noftri sexto.

NUMB. VIII.

Magn. Rot. xi. Job. rot. i.

Et pro tribus robis de Serico & tribus de viridi cum bisis, & tribus coopertoriis, & tribus culcitris, & tribus sellis cum loris, & tribus paribus lintheorum, & tribus paribus camifiarum, & braccarum, & pro aliis minutis apparatibus ad faciendos milites xxl. x s. ii. d.

NUMB. IX.

Clauf. 32 H. 2. m. 3. Mandatum est Willimo de Pleffetis, quod mittat unam robam de ferico, duas robas de panno, capam, lefium, & alia necessaria ad unum militem faciendum &c. 3 Sept.

Clauf. 33 H. 3. m. 6. Mandatum est Willimo de Pleffetis, quod Stephano de Salinis faciat habere lefium pulchrum, & tria paria robarum decentium, & alia necessaria, quæ sunt de officio veftro ad fe militem faciendum &c. 26 Julii.

Clauf. 34 H. 4. m. 19. Mandatum est Job. de Somercot & Rogero Ciffori, quod Johanni de Sumnevil, qui instanti fefto natalis Domini cingulo militia decorabitur, habere faciendam roiam de Scarletta cum penula de Bislis, vel de minuto vario, & lefium militarem, ficut alii novi milites noftri habere confuerunt &c. 26 Nov.

Clauf. 39 H. 3. m. 11. There are Mandates to deliver to Mathew Hanybal, quem Rex faciet novum militem, four Hogheads of Wine, and four Palfreys, and another to deliver him Robam de Scarletto cum minuto vario, & aliam capam, & robas fi bi convenientes & pulchrum lefium cum matricia, coopertorio, & culcitr. cum pannis ad aurum &c.

NUMB. X.

Comp. Garder. 31 E. i.

Petro de la Foix facto militi ad cointeifum fuum furrand. i pen. qr.
[. 5 ]

Eidem ad unam robam vii uln. bl. i fur. popl. i Capuc. Men.
Eidem ad aliam robam vii uln. virid. i fur. popl.
Eidem ad capam v uln.
Eidem pro leto suo x ulnas canabi.
Eidem ad linehemia min. x uln. tela.
Eidem ad culcitram suam lineand. x uln. carde.
Eidem ad matriciam x uln.

Consimilia allocantur

Job. de Horne tanquam Baneretto.
Rob. de Ufford tanquam Baneretto.
Job. de Felton, Comme a Bacheler.
Rico de --- --- tanquam simplici militii.
Job. de Dagworth tanquam simplici Baneretto.
Rich. de Stratten tanquam simplici Baneretto.
Job. de Cormailles tanquam simplici Baneretto.
Will. de Botecourt tanquam simplici Baneretto.
Job. de Berkley tanquam simplici Baneretto.
Job. Giffard tanquam simplici Baneretto.
Ph. de Nevill tanquam Baneretto.

Numb. XI.

Comp. Garder. 33. E. 1.

Pagano Tibetot ad cointesium i pen. min.
Eidem ad i rob. xii uln. i fur. i capuc. Men. i fur—
Eidem ad aliam robam. xii. uln. ii. fur. gr. capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad Capam v. uln.

Consimilia.

Georgio de Thorpe,
Jobanni de Nevil,
Johanni Douvedale,
Thoma de Latimer.
Rich. Grey facto militii ad coyntesium suum i pen. m. v.
Eidem ad primam robam suam xi uln. i fur. min. i fur. gr.
i capuc. men.
Eidem ad aliam robam suam xi uln. i fur. gr. i fur. popl.
i capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad Coopertorium suum ad xii. uln. i coopertorium. m. v.
Eidem ad capam suam. v. uln.

Consimilia.

Petro Skerk,
Will. Clerk,
Job. de Watervill,
Job. le Strange
Hugoni de Crofte,
Barth. Deynevill.

Numb.

Numb. XIII.

Computus Job. de Drokenesford Custodes Garder. 34. E. 1. Domino Edwarde Principi Wallia facto militi ad coyntefium suum furrurand. i pen. ermyn.
Eidem ad primam robam suam fibi faciendam xv uln. iii uln. furr. dim. min. ii capuc. men.

Eidem
Eidem ad secundam robam suam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad tertiam robam suam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad quartam robam suam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad quintam robam suam xv uln. iii uln. fur. dim. men. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad Sextam robam sibi faciendam xv. uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad septimam robam xv uln. ii pec. Cindon. afforc.
Eidem ad octavam robam xv uln. ii pec. Cindon. afforc.
Eidem ad coopertorium pro primo leeto suo i coopertor. m. v.
Eidem ad unum coverchief de velvet furr. pro eodem leeto i coverch. Ermyn.
Eidem ad secundum leatum ad coopertorium i coopert. m. v.
Eidem ad perfuland. furr. robarum fuarum vi capuc. m. v.
Eidem pro Balneo suo cooperiendo vi uln.
Joh. de Warenna facto militi ad coyntefium suum furr. i pen. m. v.
Eidem ad primam robam suam sibi faciend. xii uln. ii furr. i capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad aliam sibi faciend. xii uln. ii furr. i capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad capam sibi faciendam v ulnas.

Consimilia.

Joh. de Arundell, Thoma de Greyly, &c.
Brevia penes Rem. Regis in scaccario 34. Edw. i.

Edward par la grace de Dieu Roi d'Angleterre, Seigneur d'Irlaunde, & Duc d'Aquitaine a nostre chier Clerke John de Drokenesford Gardein de Garderobe saluz. Vous mandouns, que a nostre chier Vallet Thomas de Veer, qui feira fait noveau Chevalier en la Compagne Edward nostre chier fitz a ceste prochein feste de Pentecoste, facez avoir convenant attir oue couverture, sicome affiert a fon Estaye, compe pur celi qu'eft nostre nourry, & fitz de Conte. Done four nostre prive feal a Wolueseye le iii jour de May l'an de nostre regne xxxiii.

Edwardus Dei gratia Rex Anglia, Dominus Hibernia, & Dux Aquitania dilecto nobis Radulfo de Stokes clerico mag- na Garderote nostre salutem ; Mandamus vobis, quod di- lecto nobis Thomas Bardolf tanquam Baneretto decentem appara-
paratum pro se novo milite faciendo, ad festum Pentecostes prox. futurum, in comitiva Edvardi filii nostri charislimi habe- re de dono nostro faciatis, & Nos vobis inde in compoto vestro debitam allocationem habere faciamus. Datum sub privato Sigillo nostro apud Wolveseye iii die Maii anno regni nostri xxxiv.

Numb. XIV.
G. 2. penes me p. 70.
34 Ed. 1. xi Kal. Junii Edward Prince of Wales was made Knight at Westminster on the day of Pentecost, and then were made 303 Knights, and the Earls of Hertford and Lincoln put on the Spurs of the Knights.

Numb. XV.
Selden's Titles of Honour p. 642.
Anno MCCCXVI Dominus Rich. de Rodney factus fuit miles apud Keyston, die translationis Sancti Thome Martyris in pra- tentia Domini Almarici Comitis de Pembroch, qui cinctit eum gladio, & Dominus Mauritus de Berkley super pedem dextrum poexit unum calcar, & Dominus Bartholomeus de Badlesmere poexit alium super pedem finiitrum in aula, & hoc facto recellit cum honore.

Numb. XVI.
Comp. Thome de Ufflete Clerici Provistoris Garder. 16 E. 2.
ovi Milites.
Henrico Percy ad apparatum suum pro Militia a Domino Rege sucipienda apud Ebor. x die Sept. viz. ad tunicam & capam intus vigilandum de panno mixto de vii uln.
Eidem ad Cointeifum suum i pen. gr. v. de ix tiris.
Eidem ad unam robam fi the faciendum de panno scarletto xi uln. i furr. men. de vii tiris i furr. gr. v. i capuc. men. pur.
Eidem ad aliam robam fi the faciendum de panno mixto in grano xi uln. ii uln. gr. v. i capuc. men. de iii tiris.
Joannii de la Haye ad apparatum suum pro militia sua a Domino Rege sucipienda primo die Junii viz. ad coventium suum i pen. popl. de ix tiris.
Eidem ad capam suam intus vigilandum de panno color. iv uln. dim.
Eidem ad unam robam si the faciendum de panno viridi de x uln. dim. ii furr. gr. v. de viii tiris.

Eidem
Eidem ad aliam robam iibi faciendam de bl. azur. x uln. 
dim. ii furr. popl. de viii tiris ii capuc. min. de iii tiris.
Consimil. apparatum habuerunt
Will. de Dounton,  Henri. Tilly,
Will. Waykam,  Henri. Longechamp,
Remondus Durant  cum focio suo
	tanquam Banerettus  tanquam simplex miles.

**NUMB. XVII.**

*Comput. de anno 18. E. 2.*

Consimilem apparatum habuerunt infra scripti ad militiam 

suam susciendi, *viz.*

*Hugo de Poyntz* tanquam Banerettus de novo milite a Do-

mino Rege faciendo. *x Aug.*

*Petrus de Boxfede* de novo milite faciendo *xiii Aug.* per 

manus Henrici de Boxfede Germani sui.

*Ric. Pyke* de novo milite faciendo per manus Regis pro-

prrias Londini.

*Thomas de Marlebergh,*

*Petrus de la Horfe,* *24 Okt.*

*Hugo de Nevil,* *2 Apr.*

*Hugo de Pleffis* tanquam Banerettus per manus Regis 

prrias ultimo Octobris.

**NUMB. XVIII.**


rot. xxxiii Judicium contra *Andream de Harcla*

Que vous foietz degrade,

que vous perdetz noun de Counte pur vous, & pur vous 

heirs a tous jours,

que vous foietz deceynt del Espee,

que vous Esporeuns d'orrees foient coupez de Talouns.

**NUMB. XIX.**

*Comput. Thomas de Uflete Clerici Provisoris magna Garderoba*

19 E. 2.

*Jacobo Botiller* de Hibernia ad apparatum suum pro se 

novo milite faciendo, tanquam Baneretto, London ultimo 

die mensis Martij anno praenti xix, *viz.* de panno in ferico 

de Tartarin cum rad. aur. ad apparamenta sua vi uln. i pann. 

men. de ix tiris.
Eidem ad i tunicam & i capam pro vigilia sua de panno color. murray de — vi uln.
Eidem ad robam de panno scarleto xi uln. i furr. men. de viii tiris, i furr. gr. v. de vii tiris: i capuc. men. pur.
Eidem ad alteram robam de panno viridi de Duaco xi uln. i furr. men. de viii tiris, i furr. . . de vii tiris, i capuc. men. pur. de iiiii tiris.
Eidem ad i culcitram pro ledeo suo de panno ad aur. in ferico de Luka ii pann.
Eidem ad i matraciam pro ledeo suo Cindone afforciato i pec.
Eidem ad idem de Carde i pec.
Eidem ad i par lintheaminum pro ledeo suo de tela Paris xxx uln.
Eidem ad Canevaciam pro eodem ledeo suo de canabo xii uln.

Consimilem apparatum habuerunt,
Will. de Monteacuto pro fe novo milite faciendo, tanquam pro Banneretto per manus Thoma de Langford London 19 Apr.

Ebulo le Strange, &c. tanquam pro Baneretto.
Rogerus de Bourne, Henr. de Harnhall.
Rog. Only, Adam de Moleleston.
Matth. fil. Herberti, Walt. de Fauconberge.
Joh. de Gras, Willus de Albemarle.
Thomas West, Joh. de Kirketon.
Ric. ap Griffith, Henr. le Vavasour.
Tho. de Weston, Roger Deyncourt.
Tho. de Goufball.

NUMB. XX.
Comp. Thoma Uslete 20 Ed. 2.

Joh. de Bon - - - Confanguineo Regis ad apparatum suum pro militia, tanquam pro Comite sufcipienda, ad mandatum Dom. Edw. illusris Regis Angliae primogeniti London xx die Januariij anno praesenti xxv. viz. ad i tunicam & unam capam de panno Brun. mixto vi uln. dim.

Eidem ad coopertorium ledei sui pann. bl. azur. xii uln.
Eidem
[ 11 ]

Eidem ad .culcitram ledi fui de Cindone afforc. iii pec. dim.
Eidem ad matrac. ledi fui de Cindone confimili ii pec. dim.
Eidem ad par lintheam. de tela de ___ xxx uln.
Eidem ad i canevac. pro ledo suo iiiii tapet.
Eidem ad apparamenta sua de panno ad aur. in fério dyaspîn. ii pan. i pan. men. de viii tiris.
Eidem ad i rob. de panno scarlet xii uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. pur.
Eidem ad alteram robam de panno viridi xii uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. pur.

Consimiles liberaturas pro apparatibus suis habuerunt,

Edm. de Mortuomari,
Rog. de Mortuomari,
Galfr. de Mortuomari.

Gerardo de la Bret ad apparatus suum pro militia tanquam pro Banerett. a Rege suscipiend. viz.

Ad i tunica & i capam de pann. Brun. mixto vi uln.
Eidem ad culcitram ledi fui de pann. ad aur. in fério dyaspîryn. ii pann.
Eidem ad linuram ejusdem de Cindone afforcato i pec.
Eidem ad matraciam suam de Cindone afforc. i pec.
Eidem ad borduram ejusdem de Carde i pec.
Eidem ad lintheamina suâ de tela Paris xxx uln.
Eidem ad canevac. suam de Canabo xii uln.
Eidem ad apparamenta suâ de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pann. men. de iiiii tiris.
Eidem ad i rob. de panno. scarlet xi uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. men. pur. de iiiii tiris.

Consimiles apparatûs habuerunt subscripti,
Hugo. de Courtenaye, Will. de Percy,
Rad. de Wylinton, Gerardus de Insula,
Rad. Daubeneye, Petrus Breton,
Job. de Wyloughby, Rog. le Straunge,
Edw. Stradling, Ernom. de Potiers,
Rad. Baro. de Stafford,
Job. de Moeles,

viz. Singuli eorum tanquam pro Banerett.

Will. de Wyloughby ad apparatus suum pro militia sua suscipienda per mandatum consimile, viz.

Ad capam suam de pann. Brun. mixto iiiii uln.

B 2 Eidem
Eidem ad culcitram ledi fui de pann. ad aur. in canabo ii pann.
Eidem ad matraciam suam, & ad bordur. culcitrae suae de Carde ii pec.
Eidem ad lintheam. suae de tela linea Angl. xxiii. uln.
Eidem ad canevac. suam de canabo x uln.
Eidem ad apparamenta suae de panno de Tart. uln. i pann. gr. v.
Eidem ad robas suas de panno viridi & blu azur. xxi uln.
ii fur. popl. ii furr. strandt. ii capuc. men. de iii tiris.

Confiniles liberationes ad apparatus suos pro militia sua
adtunc sufciienda habuerunt subscripti, viz.

Jobes de Ralee,                 Will. Cheney,
Rad. de Bloyou,                Regin. de la Mare,
Oto Botetourt,                Rob. de Breus,
Will. Daubeneey,              Sim. fil. Radulphi,
Rob. Brente,                  Hugo Abetot,
Job. de Cherufone,            Jo. de Rous,
Jo. de Sutton,                Will. D‘eureus,
Alex. de Cobledyl,           Jo. de Hotham,
Sayerus de Rocheford,

Num. XXI.

Comput. Garder. primo Ed. 3.

Nich. de Wryght Cifiori Domini Regis ad i rob. de iv garniament. pro militia, & Coronatione ejusdem Dom. Regis facienda 25 Januarii anno regni primo. Then follow several Particulars touching this Robe, and afterwards, under the Title pro militia Regis,

Eidem xxvi die Januarii ad balneum Regis pro militia sua cooperienda de pann. ad aurum dyafpin. iiiii pann.
Eidem eodem die ad tria lintheamenta pro eisdem balneis cooperationis & pro pedibus Regis tergendi de tela Paris xxi uln.
Eidem eodem die ad i tunic. & i capam pro vigilia Regis de panno Persico in grano vi uln. & dim.
Eidem eodem die ad i tunic. i capam & i mantell. pro apparamento Regis de velveto purpureo iii pec. iii uln.
Eidem eodem die ad eandem tunicam & manicas ejusdem furrand. i furr. grif. i capuc. grif.
Eidem eodem die ad dictum mantellum furrand. de pann. men. pur. i penul. men. pur.

Ornatus
Ornatus Camerae Regis ante Militiam.

Item in apparatu & ornamento Camerae Regis in nocte, antequam suscepisset ordinem militarem viz. in palatio suo apud Westminster ultimo die January anno eodem de tapetis rubeis cum scutis in corner. de Armis Regis v tapeta.

Eodem die Quissins de Sanutello novo pro Capella Regis iii Quissins.

De Quissin Sanutello, pro eadem Camera post Militiam Regis vi.

De Banker. pro eadem Camera ornanda de diversis sectis viz. iiii rub. cum - - - virid. i virid. & iiii murr. & bluèt ix Banker.

Item de Banker pro eadem Camera ornanda de secta praedictorum tapetum cum scutis in corner. de Armis Regis iv Banker.

Numb. XXII.


Ad apparatus pro Job. de Cambridge novo milite faciendo, tanquam Baneretto per literam de privato sigillo London 22 Off. viz.

Ad tunicam & capam intus vigilandum de panno blu de London vi unl.

Eidem ad quynetefium suum de panno de Tart. vi unl. i pec. men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad duas robas de panno - - - & virid. xxiii unl. ii fur. gr. de 7 tiris, i capuc. men. dim. pur. de xxxii ventr. & i fur. popl. i fur. Strandt. i capuc. men. de iv tiris.

Eidem ad culcitram lecti suii de pann. ad aur. dyaspin ii pann.

Eidem ad Carde liniand. de findone afford. i pec.

Eidem pro bordura eujusdem de Carda i pec.

Eidem ad Matrac. suam de synd. afford. i pec. de Carda ad idem i pec.

Eidem ad lintheamenta suia de tela Paris xxx unl.

Eidem ad unam Canevac. pro eodem lecto de Canabo xii unl.

Consimilem apparatus habuerunt ad novam militiam suam subscripti, viz.

Edwardus le Blound Rich. de Baicus
Petrus de Thorntonone Banco de Lere Lumbardus
John de Cantabrig was the King's Serjeant in 4 E. 3. and in this 3d Tear a Justice Itinerant.
[14]

NUMB. XXXIII.

Comp. Nich. de la Zouche anno quarto Ed. 3.

Liberationes novorum Militum.

Thoma de Bradfian ad apparatum suum pro se novo milite, tanquam Banneretto, faciendo, viz.

Ad tunicam & capam infra vigilandum de panno col. vi uln.
Eidem ad Quantasium suum de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pen. Men. de viii tiris.
Eidem ad i robam de iv garner. de panno scarl. long. x uln. ii fur. Men. de viii tiris, i capuc. de xxxii ventr.
Eidem ad alteram suam de tot garn. de panno bl. longo x uln. ii furr. gr. v. i cap. Men. de iv tiris.
Eidem ad lectum suum viz. ad i culcitram de panno ad aur. in ferico Dyaspyi. ii panni
Eidem ad idem de sindone afforc ii pec.
Eidem ad matracium suum de Carda ii pec.
Eidem ad unum par lintheaminum pro eodem lecto de tela Paris xxx uln.
Eidem ad i canevac. de canabo xii uln.
Eidem Thoma ultra hæc, ut de dono Regis, per idem breve ibidem eodem die de Sagio, de worsted viridi i farg. cum iv tapetis.
Eidem ad i culcitram faciendam de Sindone afforciat. iii pec.
Eidem ad idem de Coton xii lib.
Eidem ad tria paria lintheaminum de tela Paris xxx uln.
Eidem ad i sævenaciam & i ridell. faciend. de carda ii pec. dim.
Eidem de faccis coreis ad pannos ii facci.
Eidem de bahudis pro eisdem ii bahudi.
Eidem de fella ad fomerium ii cum iv lingulis.
Eidem de Coffris albis i par.
Eidem de Paner. grossis i par.
Eidem ad i robam de quatuor garniamentis de panno de Douaco xii uln. ii fur. Men. de viii tiris.
Eidem ad alteram robam de totidem garnariis de panno de Lovan. xii uln. ii furr. gr. v. i capuc. men. de iv tiris.
Eidem ad quatuor paria caligarum de panno brun. ii uln. dim.
Eidem ad iv paria rob. lin. de tela Paris xx uln.
Eidem de braccal. cor. capreol. i braccal.
Eidem de capell. nigris ii.

Eidem
Eidem de Cirothecis vi paria.
Eidem de zonis fericis albis iii.
Eidem de burfs de corio albo iii.
Eidem de fellis pro palefridis i cum arfone albo & lingulis.
Eidem de gladiis ii.
Eidem de calcaribus deauratis iii paria.
Eidem de pelve ad trussandum i pelvis cum lavatorio.
Eidem de manutergis de Paris curt. ii.

Edmundo de Cornubia filio Domini Edm. de Cornubia ad appa-
ratum suum pro se novo milite, tanquam Bannaretto, facien-
do, viz.
Ad tunicam & capam infra vigilandum de panno de Col-
lon. vi uln.
Eidem ad Quayntafium suum de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pec.
Men. de viii tiris.
Eidem ad i robam suam de scarlet vi uln. Eidem ad alteram
robam suam de panno viridi de Lovan. xi uln. dim. ii fur.
men. i. fur. gr. v. i. fur. popl. ii cap. pur. quil. de xxxii ventr.
Eidem ad i lectum suum viz. ad i culcitram de panno ad aur.

Dyaflyn ii panni.
Eidem ad idem de sfindone asforc. ii pan.
Eidem ad matraciam suam de Carda ii pec.
Eidem ad i par lintheaminum de tela Paris xxiv uln.

Eidem ad Canevac. suum de Canabo xii uln.

Consimiles apparatus habuerunt

Guil. de Pomeri tanquam banerettus, & tres alii.

In this same Rolle are contained the Provisions made in the
Wardrobe for the Coronation of Queen Philippa, which was fo-
lemnized on xviii of February in this fourth Tear.

NUMB. XXIV.

Comp. Garder. de anno 5 Ed. 3.

Waltero de Manny ad apparatum suum pro se novo milite,
tanquam Bannaretto, faciendo, viz.
Ad tunicam & capam infra vigiland. de panno Col. vi uln.
Eidem ad Quayntafium suum de panno Tartar. in ferico rad.
ad aur. vi uln.
Eidem ad ii robas, qualibet de quatuor garnir. pro se de panno
dim. in grano long. & murrell. xxii uln. i fur. Men. de viii tiris,
iv fur. Men. qualibet de vii tiris. ii fur. gr. v. qualibet de vii
tiris. ii capuc Men. pur. cap. de xxxii ventr.

Eidem
This most valiant Knight was a Native of Henault, brought over hither by Queen Philippa, and made her Carver, & demoura la jeune Royne Philippe a petite compagnie de fon pays, hormis une Damoifel, qu'on appeloit par nom Wantelet de Manny, qui y demoura pour servir & tailler devant elle: lequel fit puis tant de prouesses en tant de lieux, qu'on n'en fcait le nombre.

He was afterwards most deservedly elected into the Order of the Garter.
\[ \text{NUMB. XXVI.} \\
\text{Comp. Garderob. 7 E. 3.} \\
\text{Consimilem apparatum pro militia a Rege fuscipiende habuere} \\
\text{fobes de Shoreditch,} \\
\text{Will. de Sharefhull,} \\
\text{Nath. de Bathonia,} \\
\text{Simou fil. Richardi,} \\
\text{Rob. de Scardeburgh,} \\
\text{Job. Petit,} \\
\text{Nih. Giffart.} \]

William de Sharefhull was made a Judge in this Tear. Rob. de Scarburgh was Chief Justice of the Common Pleas in the 14th Tear. John Shoreditch was a Judge in the 12th Tear. And if these two latter were the Persons, thus created Knights in this 7th Tear, the Note inserted in Dugd. Jurid. p. 137. which afferts that no Sergeants at Law were Knighted before xxvi of Hen. viii, may be a Mistake.

\[ \text{NUMB. XXVII.} \\
\text{anno 21. usq; 31 Januar. anno 23. Edv. 3. m. 21.} \\
\text{Domino Mauritio Fitz Thomas de Kildare & socio suo pro apparatibus suis ad ordinem militarem fuscipiend. de manibus Dom. noftri Regis ad festum Natalis Dom. apud Gulesford celebratum anno regni 21. viz. ad i cotam & unam capam ipfius Comitis pro vigilia fua, & pro coopertorio & teftario fuae faci, & de Sindone afforc. & pro coopertorio de pann. curt azureo fur. de men. pur. & pro lintheam. de tela Paris faci. Et ad i Canabum pro eodem leceto faci. & ad iii tapeta lanae, quodlibet tapet. continen. xii uln. & dim. & ad faciend. paramenta fua de Dyaspyne fortz fur. de men. pur. Et ad faciend. i rob. de pann. long. scarleti de Brucell. fur. cum fur. de meniver.} \\
\text{Et ad unam aliam robam de pann. long. virid. de Brucell. fur. cum menever, & ad faciend. unam cotam, & i capam pro Domino Philipo de Staunton predicto pro vigilia sua de pann. rufseto & ad faciend. lectum suum de panno Dyaspyne net Cardæ de Lumbardie, tela de Wilton & canabi, & ad facienda apparamenta sua de panno ferici Tartaryn fur. cum meniver, & ad i faciend. i rob. suum de pann. viridi curt. fur. cum menever, pople, & Straulyng.} \\
\text{C} \]
Ii uln. dim. pro vigil. pann. curt. mixt.
x uln. pann. azur. pro coopert. lecti color. curt.
i penul. pro leeto de cccixii ventr. men. pur.
i pec. dim. Sindonis afforc.
xxx uln. telae Paris.
xv uln. curt. canabi.
iiii tapeta lanae.
ii pan. Dyaspyns fortz.
i penul. de cxxiii ventr. men. pur.
xi uln. panni long. de scarletto de Brucell.
vi furr. utr. de viii tiris fur. men.
vi capuc. utr. de xl ventr. men. pur.
xxi uln. pan. long. virid. de Brucell.
vi furr. men. utr. de viii tiris - - -
i capuc. de xl. ventr. men. pur.
vi uln. pann. ruffeti curt.
ii pan. Dyaspynet.
ii pec. Carde.
xxiii uln. curt. telae de Wilton.
x uln. curt. de Canabo.
vi uln. de Tartaryn.
i penul. de c vent. men.
x uln. panni virid. color. curt.
ii capuc. utr. de - - - ventr. men.
ii furr. pople.
ii furr. de Straulyn.

Dom. Thomas de Fencotes pro apparatu suo ad recipiend.
ordinem militarem de manibus Regis ad modum Baneretti
ad festum Natalis Domini apud Guldesford.
x uln. panni long. scarletti in grano.
x uln. pan. long. virid.
ii furr. utr. de viii tiris men.
ii fur. de pople.
ii fur. de bifs.
ii capuc. utr. de xxxii ventr. men. dim. pur;
i penula de cxx ventr. menev.
vi uln. pan. curt. Ruffet.
vi uln. de Tartaryn.
ii pec. Carde.
xxxiii uln. curt. telae Paris.
ii pann. ad aur. Dyaspin.
i pec. Sindonis afforc.

Tho,
Tho. de Fencotes was constituted Judge of the Common-Plas 14 January 21 E. 3.

**Num B. XXVIII.**

Comp. Joh. Norbury custodis magn. Garder. anno 34 Ed. 3. m. 5.


These two were constituted Judges of the Common-Plas, the first on 11 July, the later on 25 Oct. 33 E. 3.

**Num B. XXIX.**

Comp. Alani de Stokes Cuslod. Garder. 7 Ric. 2. m. 10.


**Num B. XXX.**

Liber Cotom. in Officio Garderob. 2 R. 2.


NUMB. XXXI.

Computus Garderobœ in Libro Cotom. dîdo 12 Rich. 2.


NUMB.
Numb. XXXII.


Numb. XXXIII.

Froiff. vol. 4. c. 63. in his Narrative of the first Expedition of Rich. 2. into Ireland, informs us that Henry Caffide proposed to the four Kings of that Country, who submitted themselves, "Se volontiers ils recevoient l'ordre de Cheva-

"lerie, & que le Roy d'Angleterre les vouloit faire Cheva-

"liers : ainsi comme usage & coutume de France, & en "Angleterre, & en autres pais ——— & furent faits Cheva-

"liers de la main du Roy Richard d'Angleterre en l'eglise "Cathedrale de Dunglin [Dublyn] & fut le jour nostre dame en "Mars, qui fut en ce temps par un Jeudi, & adonc veil-

"lerent le Mecredi toute la nuit ces quatre Rois en ladite "Eglise & au lendemain a la mesle & a grande solennite "ils furent faits Chevaliers ; ——— & estoient les quatre Rois "trefrichement vestus ainsi comme a eux appartenoin, & "S'affirent ce jour a la table du Roy Richard d'Angleterre." As it is in the printed Edition, but in a most beautiful MS. Et servent ce jour a la table du Roy d'Angleterre.

Numb. XXXIV.

Froiff. l. 4. c. 114, describes the Coronation of Hen. 4. Le Samedi devant son couronnement, il se departit de Westmon-

"fiere, & s'en alla au Chasteau de Londres, a tout grand nombre. de.
de gens : Et celle nuit y veillerent tous les Escuyers, qui devoient estre faits Chevaliers le lendemain, qui furent le nombre de xlvi, & eurent tous ces Escuyers chacun sa chambre, & chacun son bain, ou ils se baignerent celle nuit, & le lendemain le Duc de Lanciafle les fit Chevaliers a sa Messe, & leur donna longues cottes verdes a estroites manches fourrees de menuver [& grans chapperons paraulx fourres de Menu vair] en guise de Prelats ; & avoient les dits Chevaliers fur sa fenestre efpaule un double cordeau de foye blanche, a blanches houppettes pendans.

The Words in the Italick Character are conteined in a beauti-ful Manuscript of this History.

NUMB. XXXV.

On the Sundaie following, being the even of St. Edward, the new King lodged in the Tower, and there made forty six Knights of the Bath, to wit : three of his Sonnes, The Earle of Arundell, the Earle of Warwike his Sonne, the [Brother of the] Earle of Stafford, Two of the Earle of Devonshire's Sonnes, the Lord of Beaumont, the Lord Willoughbye's Brother, the Earle of Stafford's Brother, the Lord Camois his Sonne, The Lord of Paule, Thomas Beauchampe, Thomas Pelham, John Luttrell, John Lifteie, William Heankesford Justice, William Brinchleic Justice, Bartholomew Rachford, Giles Daubenie, William Butler, John Ashton, Richard Sanape, John Tipfton, Richard Francis, Henri Piefe, John Arundell, William Strall, John Turpington, Ailmer Saint, Edward Haftings, John Creifeie, Gerald Satill, John Arden, Robert Chalons, Thomas Dimocke, Hungerford, Gilethorpe, Newport, and diverse others, to the Number of for-tie and six.

NUMB. XXXVI.
Liberatio pannorum in magna Garderoba Domini Regis erga Coronationem Domini Henrici Regis Anglie Quarti.

Dominis Thoma, Johanni & Humfrido filiis Domini Regis pro apparatibus suis ad ordinem militarem de eodem Rege apud Turrim London in vigilia Coronationis sua recipendum, videlicit, cuilibet eorum ad unam capam infra vigilandum iii uln. pann. Ruffet long. & ad unum mantellum v uln. tartarin virid. radiat. cum aur. & furrur, de cxx ventr. men. pur. pro efdem mantellis furrurand, & ad lectos suos & Balnea, videlicit cuilibet


Henrico Greene Regi Heraldororum, & aliis certis Heraldis de Anglia, & de Scotia, & de aliis partibus extraneis existentibus apud Turrim London die Dominico prox. ante Coronationem Domini nostri Regis Henrici quarti ad solenpuitatem diversforum militum de novo creatorum per dictum Dominum Regem xx marcas, quas Dominus Rex eisdem Heraldis liberare manda- vit de dono Regis per brev. &c. xiii l. vi s. viii d.

NUMB.
Num. XXXVII.
Mf. Norfolc. in Off. Arm. u. 15.

Anno Domini 1413 atatis vero hujus Principis xxvi, quinto nonas Aprilis die viz. Veneris ante Dominicanum passionem Domini, omnibus ad futuram Coronationis solemnitatem requisitam secundum laudabiles ritus regni Anglia requisito modo lapidum in regni prudentia previa praeparatis, Prefatus Princeps concomitante honorabilium Procerum tam spiritualium quam temporalium nobili & praefantissimi comitiva de Kynefton super Thamesiam versus castrum suum vocatum Turrim London iter arripuit, cui venienti numerofa multitudo Principum, Comitum, Baronum, Militum, Armigerorum, & aliorum Procerum regni sui, necnon concives London modo competenti & nobili appara-tu, & cum debiti honoris impenfa, ac universus clerus processione festiva & omni solenmitate qua poterant obviam veniebant, sicque Turrim London talibus exaltatus honoribus est ingressus. Apud ipsam Turrim London congregati erant circiter quinquaginta fve plures proceres, Juvenes notabiles ad dignitatem militaris Ordinis multum apti, a principibus & regi nobilibus trahentes originem, qui ad hoc convenient, ut in tanta solennitate exordio in sui honoris incrementum a tanto Princepe in milites crearentur. Venerando quoq Principi tanta solennitate festum, cui nihil requisitum deeerat, unacum Principibus, & Magnatibus suis præsentia propria decoratu statu regio, prout decuit, resfenti tocinij, fefi festivam claritatem suæ dignitatis illufranti radiis, Juvenes vestimentis, quibus taliter ordinandos vestiri decuit, decenter amici, in signum quod con-fimile obsequium sub armigerorum habitu non erant de cete-ro præstititur ad epularum solennia regia ferendo fercula obfe-qvia debita exhibebant, qui in continent meaning abat tanti convivii Epulas, ac cameras suas, loco viz. ad tanta negocia parato, & deputato ducebantur, ibiq Duces, Comites, Barones, & nobiles milites consultores habeabat, qui qualiter fe gere- rent in venerabili ordine, quem supefturium fuerant, quid ei-dem ordinum conrum, & quod conrum esf posse, ipfos sum-ma prudentia & cura diligentissima informabant. Ipsi quorum juvenes temporae congruenti balnea ad hoc parata, ut moris eft, intrabant, vigilias congruas sub vigili custodia observabant, & aliis quibus fungunt, observancis, quæ tali negotio pertinere sole-bant, totis usibus infitiebant; Tota deinceps nocte in talibus expedita, & tenebris Phæbi radiis exilium pacientibus, aurora lucente.
lucente, letis preciosis aureis, in quibus requieverunt, quibusdam famulis regis, ut moris est, pro eorum feodo liberatis, misa audita, & certæ devotionis suffragiis completis, equos nobiles ascendentes juvenes ordinandi; pallis fericis induti usq; ad aulae regiae januas devenerunt, ubi cum descendissent, quilibet ipforum inter duos milites, secundum quod ejus statui five gradui congruebat, honorifice deductus, a Principe magnifico statu residente regio numeris venerabilium & magnumatum fipato cuneis in novos honores militaris Ordinis promovetur. Deinde in eisdem palliis fericis in regali praëstoria discumbentibus, licet preciosis ferculis antepositis, per tota prandendi tempora nil gustabant. Post tanta regalis convivii folennia, novelli milites ipfa pallia exuentes, vestes de liberata regia ejufdem fecta preciosas nimiun inducabant; & cum ipfe Rex in ifta eadem vigilia Dominicae Passionis usq; Westmonferium in summâ nobilitate & competentifima ordinatione concomitante innumerabili multitudine Principum & Nobilium regni fui, prout tantam mageftatem regiam decuit, equitaret, Omnes praetati juvenes tirunci ordine composito spectabili apparatu intuencium oculis fuo getu nimias conferendo delicias, ipsum Regem per medium Civitatis London præcedebant equeftribus.

See 62 B. 5. in bibl. Harl. where (if my Memory doth not fail me) Elmham is faid to be the Writer of this History.

NUMB. XXXVIII.
Liberatur. Dom. nostri Regis Henrici Quinti faga diversis Dominis, Dominabus, Militibus, Clericis, Scutiferis, Valettis, & aliis diversis personis contra Coronationem fuan &c.
Fabian. Chron. p. 397. 5 Hen. 5. The King held St. George’s Feast, and dubbed there xv Knightes of the Bath, The Register of the Garter places it under this Tear, Anno Regis Henrici quinti omni genere virtutum praefistantissimi quinto, Cana oppido non exiguo jam fibi subaetio, Duciq Clarentia credito, celebritatem Divi Georgii pro temporis exigentia curavit inibi fervandam, ubi quindecem Equites regio more concreavit, p. 65. See Leland’s Collect. vol. i. p. 488.

Stow’s Ann. p. 350. 6 H. 5. The King went to Caen, where he solemnized the Feast of St. George, at which Feast he made xv Knightes of the Bath, five of them were Sir Lewis Robfart, Sir Roger Salveine, Sir John Stewart, Sir John Shotebroke and Sir John Montgomery, whom he sent to besiege diverse Places thereabouts.

Titus Livius p. 56. Walfingham. p. 448. place this Creation in the 6th Tear, and likewise Elmham in Bibli. Harley 62. B. 5. as also the MS. Life of Hen. 5 in the College of Arms, which begins Lucerna &c. which two latter Writers are express quoddam nobiles secundum Balneorum observantias creavit in milites.

In another MS. in the College of Arms, inter Cod. Norf. N. 48. after the Narrative of the Surrender of Faloys, the King returned to Caen, and on 16th Febr. ordered a Proclamation Et en icelluy ann fift le Feste de Seint George en la ville de Caen, en laquelle il fift plusieurs Chevaliers de fon houffell.

Comiti Stafford, ad, & pro apparatu suo ad ordinem militarem de Domino Rege nostro apud castrum de Wyndesore in vigilia Festi Sancti Georgii recipiend. viz. ad i Capam &c.

**NUMB. XLI.**

In the Inventory of the Goods of Hen. 5, entred in Rot. Parl. 2 H. 6. m. 3c. Item divers remenantz de Tarterin Ray ordeignez pur les Chevaliers de Bath pris xx s.

**NUMB. XLII.**

Henry 6. upon Whitfunday in his fourth Year was dubbed Knight, by the Regent [John Duke of Bedford his Uncle] at Leicester, and then forthwith the King dubbed Richard Duke of York, that after was Father to King Edward the Fourth, and others to the Number of Forty. Stow's Chron. p. 368.

This Historian doth not say, that this was the Degree of the Knighthood of the Bath, and agrees not in the Number with the Register of the Garter p. 93, which reckons only 38.

Mr. Rymer vol. x. p. 356, hath published the Names of the Persons, to whom special Writs were ordered to be sent, commanding them to attend upon the King, and to receive the Order of Knighthood with him, some of them being then in Wardship, the Writs were directed to their Guardians, and others in their Minority, the Writs were sent to their Fathers.

De Ordine Militari una cum Rege succipiando

Richardus Dux Eborum,
Comitisæ Westmerlandia,
Job. filius & hæres Ducis Norf.
Duci Northfolcia,
Hen. filius Com. Northumbria,
Comiti Northumbri,
Thomas Dominus de Roos,
Thomas de Beaumont,
Dom. de Beaumont matri suæ,
Filius & hæres Dom. de Talbot,
Domino de Talbot, Sibimet,
Comes Devon, Henry Gray,
Comitia Clarentia, Domino de Grey de Codenore,
Johannes Comes Oxon, Robertus Veer,
Richardus Comes Westmerlanda, Gilbertus Denham,
Dominus de Camoys, Sibimet,
Willielmus Sheyne, - - - - - Drury,
Willielmus Babyngton, Sibimet,
Jacobus filius Comitis Ormond, - - - - - Carbonet,
Domino de Bourgavenny, Sibimet.

Henry Bourghchier,

In dorfo.

Quarto die Maii anno quarto apud Leycestriam ordinatum fuit, quod dirigantur literæ personis infrascriptis de veniendo ad præsentiam Regis ad dictam villam pro ibidem una secum sucipiendo in fe Ordinem Militarem in fefto Pentecostes tunc proxime futuro. Praesentibus Dominis Bedfordiæ, Cantuariensi, & Eborum Cancellario Archiepiscopis, Duce Exoniæ, Episcopis Dunelmensi, Eliensi, & Bathoniensi, ac Custode Privati Sigilli, Dominis de Cromwell, & de Scrop, & aliis in Parliamento existentibus.

Num. XLIII.
WT. in Off. Arm. p. 34. Anno Domini 1429.
The Coronation of King Henry 6.

The sixth day of November, the King of England was crown'd at Westminster on St. Leonard's-Day, and at the same Coronation weare made xxxii Knights of the Bathe, and the Morrow after was the Princes Some of Portugal made Knight in the Whitehall at Westminster.

Fabians Cron. p. 419. at whose Coronation were made xxxvi Knights of the Bath, Stow's Annals p. 371. to the same effect.

Num. XLIV.
Pat. 25. H. 6. p. 2. m. 5.
Rex omnibus, ad quos &c. Salutem,

Sciatis quod, per quandam Supplicationem, nobis, per dilectum Servientem nostrum, Robertum Bolley, Servientem Ewariae nostræ, exhibitam, accepimus, qualiter ipse Oppellas Barbitonforum, ad portam hospitii nostri, ubi-cumque fuerat, cum tot servientibus, quot pro occupatione hujusmodi Oppella prædītæ necessarii fuerunt, & opportuni, habuit & occupavit, cum omni-
omnibus Proficuis & Commoditibus eidem Occupationi ali-
quo modo pertinentibus, five spectantibus, prout ipse tempore carissimi Domini & Patris nostri Defuncti habuit.

De Gratia nostra Speciali Concessimus praefato Roberto, & Alejandro Donour Valetto Ewariae nostra Opellas Barbitonorum ad Portam, seu Portas Hospitii nostri, Tenendas, habenda, & Occupandas a quinto die Julii Anno Regni nostri vicemimo tertio, pro termino vita corundem Roberti & Alexandri, & alterius eorum diutius viventis, cum tot servientibus, in Opellis prædictis servientibus & servituris, quod pro occupatione prædicta necessarii fuerint & oportuni, cum omnibus Proficuis & Commoditatis, una cum feodis Militum de Balneo, quando erunt milites facti, five creati, videlicet,

De qualibet milite viginti quatuor ulnas Panni lanei, qui erunt circa Balneum, una cum una Tapet Longitudinis trium virgarum de Rubro Worsted, ac etiam viginti solidos pro Ra-
fura cujuslibet Militis sic creati.

Quadraginta Solidos de qualibet Barone, feu ejus Pare pro ejus Rafura.

Centum Solidos de qualibet Comite, feu ejus Pare pro ejus Rafura.

Et decem libras de qualibet Duce, feu ejus Pare pro ejus Ra-
fura.

Et ulterius Concessimus, quod nullus alius Barbitonfor habe-
at feu occupet aliquas Opellas Barbitonorum, prope Portam, seu Portas Hospitii nostri, nisi prædicti Robertus, & Alexander, durante vita eorum, & alterius eorum diutius viventis, eo quod expressa Mentio de aliis donis, & Concessionibus eisdem Roberto & Alexandro per nos ante hac tempora factis in Praefentibus facta non existit, aut aliquo fratuto, actu, vel ordinatione, in contrarium factis non obstantibus.

In cujus, &c.

Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium vicefimo quinto Die Julii.

Per ipsum Regem, & de Data prædicta Authoritate Parliamenti.

NU M B R. XLV.

In my Notes to the Register of the Garter under the xxviii Year of H. 6. there is an Instrument printed, which among several other things, orders the Heralds to be paid, for the feast of the newe made Knights at the Tour Cs, in the 31 Year of his Reign.

NU M B R.
Upton de re militari p. 8. Creantur & alio modo Milites, videlicet per Balneum, qui modus observatur in Anglia, & aliis regnis, ubi regnat pax.

Ibid. p. x. Ipsi Milites, qui creantur per Balneum, portant de confuetudine in humero sinistro suum stigmate militare album; quod quidem stigmate dictus tiro portabit, quousque fecerit aliquid notabile factum, nisi aliqua nobilis Dominæ illud tollat, ut docet confuetudo Angliæ.

Knights of the Bath made at the Tower of London before the Coronation of King Edward IV.

George, Duke of Clarence, Brethrene to the King.
Richard, Duke of Gloucester, 
John Mowbray, Sonne and Heire to the Duke of Norfolk.
John Stafford, afterward Earl of Wiltshire.
Lord Thomas Fitz-Alane, Sonne and Heire to the Earl of Arundell.

Sir John Markham, Sir Robert Markham,
Sir Robert Danby, Sir Robert Cliffton,
Sir William Gelverton, Sir William Stanley,
Sir John Wingefeld, Sir Nicholas Byron,
Sir Walter Blount, Sir William Cantelewe.

On the 10th day of July following, there was paid Gartero & cæteris Regibus armorum & heraldis pro milicia Ducis [Clarenc.] fratris dom. Regis x l. B. 3. p. 42. and the like for the Duke of Gloucefter, pro militia. Ms. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 117.

Fragment relating to Edw. IV. published by Mr. Hearne at the End of Sprots Chronicle p. 288. The 26 of January the King E. removed from Sheene—rode streigte unto the Toure of London and reftid there all night, where as on the morow He made xxxii Knightis of the Bathe, the whiche day at afternoone depering frome the Toure, in like goode ordre as they came thid-dir, theis xxxii nw Knightes preceding immediately before the King in their Gownis and Hoodis, and tookins of whigte Silke upon their Shouldeirs, as is accustumed at the Bath, and so in this goodely ordre He was brought to Westmynster, where as
on the morow being St. Petirs-day and Sonday be was solempnely crownid, &c.

Menen. Delicia Equestri. p. 8. faith that Ed. IV. was knighted by the Earl of Devon.

**Num. XLVIII.**

Fragment relating to Ed. IV. published by Mr. Hearne at the End of Sprots Chron. p. 294, 295, 26 May 1464. Queen Elizabeth was crownid at Westminster with great solemnite, where as were made Knights of the Bath (as I knowe) the Lorde Duras, Sr. Bartelot de Ribaire of Bayen, Gascons, Sir John Wydevile Brothir to the Queene, &c.

Fabian. Chron. p. 495, 1464, (5 E. 4.) 26 May that yeere Whitsonday, Queene Elizabeth was crownid at Westminster with great Solempnite: at the which season at the Towre, the night before the Coronation, among many Knightes of the Bath, there made was as of thot companie, Sir Tho. Cooke, Sir Matthew Phillip, Sir Raaffe Joffeline, and Sir Henry Wavir Citizens of London, then and there made Knightes.

**Num. XLIX.**

Stat. 8. E. 4. c. 2. An Act for Lyvereys. Provided that this Ordinance do not extend to any Lyverey gyven or to be gyven at the Kings or Queens Coronation —— or at the Creation of Knightes of the Bath, &c.

**Num. L.**

In the Treatise filed Domus Regis Angliae made under the Reign of this King, under the Title of Kings of Arms, Heraldts, and Pursuivants, is this Clause. The Fees that they shal take at the making of Knights of the Bath, it appeared next after in the Chapter of Squires. In the Chapter touching the Waits, also this Toman waited at the making of Knightes of the Bath waiting by night time upon them in the Chapel, &c.

**Num. LI.**


Edward by the Grace of God of Inglonde, and of Fraunce Kinge, lorde of Irelande enhaunshed to the Order of Knighthode, after the Cuftume of Inglande, in tyme of Peace, his deceit Son my Lord Prince of Wales Duke of Cornwall, and Erle of Chester,
Chesler, and his right dere Son the Duke of Torke, to whome were compeny and enhaunced with them to the same Knighthood Therle of Lincoln son and heyre of the Duke of Suffolke, the lorde Thomas [Gray] the Quenes fon, and his Brother the Lorde Richard, Therle of Shrowesbury, Therle of Wilteshore, mayster Edward Widevill, the lorde Nevell, the Lorde Baykle-ley’s son and heyre, the Lorde Awdeley’s son and heyre, the Lorde Seyntamant, the lorde Stanley’s son and heyre [George] the lorde Storton’s son and heyre, Mayster Herbert Broder of the Erle of Pembroke, Mayster [Thomas] Vaughan, Bryan chefe Judge, Lytylton oone of the Judges of the Comon Place, Mayster [Henry] Bodryngam, Mayster Bryan Stapilton, [William] Knuyvett, Pilkynton [Richard] Ludlow [Richard], Charleton. Memorand. that the same day the Kinge create the forefayde Lord Thomas [Gray] Marquis Dorfett before dynner, and so in the habitt of Marquis above the habitts of new Knights, and he began the Table of Knights in Sainte Edward’s Chambre, and gave to the Officers of Armes for theyre Fee xx marks. Memorand. That at the tyme ordeined, that the King’s Chamberlein shulde goo with the aun- cient and well nortred Knights to advertyse, and teche the Ordre of Knighthod to the Esquiers beinge in the Bayne. The Kinge came in his own Person, and dyd honour to all the Compeny with his own noble counself and hands.

Stow in his Annals, p. 428. gives the like Narrative.

NUMB. LII.

E. x. penes me, p. lvii. compared with G. 2. p. 341. B. 2.
p. 278. and w. y. in Off. Armorum.
The Marriage of Richard Duke of York, second Son to Edw. 4.

In the yere of our Lorde 1477, the Kinge our Sovereigne Lorde one the xv daye of Januarye solempnised the matrimonial Festes of his dere Sonne the Duke of Torke, and the noble Lady Anne Daughter and sole heyre of John Duke of Northfolke, to the honoringe of the whiche the King directed his Lettres to divers Nobles of this Realme to coome and appere at his Palace of Weftm. one the forsayed daye to take the Order of Knighthode, and many of them were pardoned, and parte of them enhanfed to the Order of Knight-

hoode,
hoode, as, and in lyke Order, as they ensuen, in Seint Edward's Chamber, one the xvii day of the forefaid Month, and were dubbed one the xviii daye.

The Bowser, son and heir. [Henry son and heir of the Lord Bourgbier,]

[The Lorde Latynyr,]
The Lord Barnes,
The Lord Powis,
The Lord Morlye,
[The Lorde Lawarre,]
The Lord Mountjoy,
The Lord Beauchamp, son and heir [John]
Sir Thomas Howard, [son and heir of the Lord Howard,]
Sir Thomas Bowser,
Sir Thomas St. Leger,

In severall Copies of these Knights, there is a Note added.

Be it remembred, That these four, Sir Richard Lakin, Sir William Redman, Sir Thomas Frowyke and Sir Hen. Wentworth, not counselled to shew most worshipie, denied part of the Duties belonging unto the Officers of Armes, which being referred to the Lord Chamberlain, to whom the said Officers had their resort, who well and perfectly understood of all the auncient noble Customes of Chevalrie, He went and shewed it to the Kings Grace, and to the High and Mighty Prince the Duke of Gloucefler, high Constable of England, who then was Judge of the Office of Armes, who went in his own Person, and commanded William Griffith, one of the Marshalles of the King's halle, to charge every man of the forsayde Compeny to paye their Duties unto the Officers of Armes, that ys to understande, of every Batcheler Knight xx s. of every Baron the double, and so dowlbe after their degree, which commandemente was kept and payde for, &c.

Mr. Thinne, in his Advocate and Anti-advocate, MS. G. 2. penes me, p. 237. faith, that these were then created Knights of the Bath.

It may be here observed, that beside these Sums in Money, the Officers of Armes then constantly received several of the Robes
as their Perquifites, which are specifyd in the antient Formula-ries, and the Memorials of the Receipts of them from the 19 Hen. 8. remain still in the College, entred in the Books of the Partitions of their Fees.

NUMB. LIII.

Stow's Ann. P. 418. Judgement given against Sir Ralph Grey, That his Spurs should be striken off hard by the heels, by the Hand of the Master-Cook, who is here ready to do, as was promised thee, at the time that he took off thy Spurs, and said to thee as is accustomed, That and thou be not true to thy Sovereign Lord, he shall smite off thy Spurs with his Knife hard by the Heels, and so shewed him the Master-Cook ready to do his Office, with his Apron and his Knife.

There is a Memorandum entred in the Year-Book, Pasch. 4. Ed. 4. Et le dit Sir Ralph Grey fuit cary a Loncaatre, & la fut deprive del honor del Chevalier devant mults del People le Roy: i. Ses gilt Spores hewes de ses pees & son espee, & tout son armour fur luy debrufe, & pris de luy en le champe, &c.

NUMB. LIV.

To Otes Gilbert Squier.


Trusty and welbeloved, We grete you wele.
And by th'advise of our Derreft uncle the Duc of Gloucefter, Protectour of this oure Royallme, during our Young Age, and of the Lords of our Counsell, we write unto you at this time, Willing and Nathelasse, Charging you to prepare, and furnish yourself to receive the noble ordure of Knighthood, at our Coronation, which, by God's Grace, we intende shall be solemnised the xxii Day of this present moneth, at oure Palays of Westminifter, commaundung you to be here at oure Toure of London four Days afore the said Coronation, to have Comynycation with oure Commissioners concerning that matter, not failing herof in any wife, as ye intend to please us, and as ye will answer.

Yeven, &c. the v Day of Juyn.

Semblable
Semblable Letters to

John Speke,
  Beaumont,
Edward Courtney,
William Garrault,
Thomas Arundell,
William Bolney,
Alexander Creffemere,
John Clopton,
Henry Hayden,
John Wynkefeld,
Christopher Willoughby,
Philip Caliborpe,
  Bedyngfeld,
Thomas Lewkenore,
William Barkely,
John Stanley,
  Gravile,
William Birmygam,
Thomas Butteler of Beawsey,
John Beron,
William Trowthek,
  Milbourn,
The Lord Dormond,
The Lord Sutton,
Cornwaill Lord of Burford,
  Nevill, Son and Heir of
  the Lord Bergevenny,

In the same Collection is a Writ from the Close Rolls. 1 E. 5. m. 1. bearing date 20 May, directed to the Sheriffs to summon such as have 40 l. and have not been knighted, to appear on the 8th Day of June, to receive that Order.

NUMB. LV.

WT. in Offic. Arm. p. 42b

Knights of the Bath, made at the Coronation of Richard 3.
  and Queen Anne.

Sir Edmond the Duke of Suffolks Son,
Sir John Grey Earl of Kents Son,
Sir William Lord Sowche his Brother,

John Brown of Stamford,
The Lord Grey of Ruthen,
John Gifford,
William Chenay of Shepay,
Robert White of Southwarne-Borrowe,
Gervase Clyfton of Oddisake,
Nicholas Lile,
William Barkely of Beverston,
Henry Vernon,
Nicholas Montgomery,
Grene,
William Ouedale,
William Say,
  Son and Heir of Lord Cobham,
Th. Hamden of Hamden,
Thomas Darcy,
Rauf Sanford,
  Babyngellon,
Henry Colet, Alderman of London,
  Kyngiston,
John Pawlet,
Thomas Wyndesore,
John Roger of Fresolke.

Sir
Sir Henry Burgavenny [Geo. Nevil Son and Heir to the Lord of Burgavenny,]
Sir Christopher Wylloughby,
Sir William Barkley of Beverston,
Sir Henry Banington [Banington, in Hollings. in another Mr. Baynton. Banington in Grafton's Chron.]
Sir Thomas Arundell,
Sir Thomas Bolayne,
Sir Edmond Bedingfeld,
Sir Brewas of Clifton [Gervase]
Sir William Say,
Sir William Enderby,
Sir Thomas Lewkenor,
Sir Thomas Ormond [of Urmond in Hollings.]
Sir John Browne,
Sir Edmund Cornwall Baron Burford.
This is printed in Grafton, p. 799. and I have old Copies in E. 10. p. 13. E. 11. p. 192.

NUMB. LVI.

G. 5. pene me p. 75.
The Coronation of Hen. VII.

A. D. 1485. Upon Symon and Judes Evyn, the King proceed-
ed to the Tower—and on the day following. It is to be re-
membre, that same day before dinner entered the yonge Duke of Buckingham to receive th'ordre of Knyghthode of the Bathe, the whiche held the Kings Towell, and the Lord Fitzwater ent-
tred for license, he berith the King water, and in the like fourme entred [Thomas] Cokesay, Roger Lewkenor, Henry Hey-
don, Reginald Braye, and John Verney, whiche every ech of theym bere a Dish to the Kings Table, the first cours onely, after that the Esquiers Governours wer assigned them, and their Baynes were prepared in a grete Chambre in the Don-
gon, as of olde tyme accustomed. And when it was nyght, the King hymself of his benigne grace, nobly accompanied with the Duc of Bedford, Therle of Oxenford, Therle of Dar-
bye, Therle of Devonshire, with many other noble Lordez, Knyghtes, and Esquiers first yave them in the Beyn the Advertisement of the Ordre of Knyghthode, and afor hym other Eftats and Lordez &c. On the Saturdaye, when the Es-
quiers
quiers whiche hadd bene in the Baynez where, and after alle other observances as of olde tyme accustumed, wer come into the Hall, the Kinge in a riche gowe entred the Halle, and stode under the Clothe of Effeate, to whome the Duke of Buck. was presented by two Aftates, and the Hensman that here the Swerd and the Sporez presented them to the Erle of Oxenford, And he toke the Right Spore, and presented it to the King, and the King toke it to the Duc of Bedforde, command-ing hym to put it upon the Duc of Buckingham’s right Hele; and in likewyse therle of Darby the left Spore, and the King girde the Swerde aboute hym and after dubbed hym Knyght. And in likewyse and forme was the Lord Fitzwater presented by two Baronez, and other Knyghts by Knyghtes, having a King of Armez before them, and when the Knyghtes were elle dubbed, The King create a Pur-vaunte, and named hym Rougedragon, and then the King departed to his Chambre, the newe Knyghtes wente to the Chapell and offered as accustumed, And then they alle turned into the Halle ageyn, and satte alle at one Table and at one syde.

Menen. Del. Equeft. p. 8, faith that Hen. 7. himself was knighted by the Earl of Arundell.

In a Roll of Knights created by Hen. VII, now in my Custody, which is on Parchment, and contains their Arms in proper Metals and Colours, and bath all the Marks of being the Original kept by the then Garter King of Arms, these Knights are not specified to be Knights of the Bath, but are therein entred only. under the Denomination of Knyghts made at the Coronacion off the Kyng.

NUMB. LVII.


On Fryday next before Seint Katheryn’s day, the Quenys-good Grace—— came forwarde to the Coronacion—— entred into the Tower—— and ther the Gentilmen, called by the King’s mooft honourable lettres to receyve the Order of Knyghthod, were created Knyghts of the Bath, in manner and forme as the picture thereof made, shewethe, whos names with the Esquiers.
Equires Governors by the Kings appoyynment to attende upon the tyme of their faide Creation be hereafter written.

The Lord William Sone and heir of therle of Devonshir by his Brother
The Lord Edward Dudley by Edward Bensted
William John Gascoyne by Thomas Totof
Thomas Buteler by Henry Laurence
Edwarde Barkley by William Woodall
William Lucy by Thomas Troyes
Wylliam Lucy by William Treverye
Thomas Hungreforde by John Bell
Robert Knowles by Robert Knowles
Guydo Wolston by Warrant
Richard Thomas Pemery by William Watesley
John Rauff Sheldon by John Wharff
Pyers Brent by Pyers Brent
Hugh Lotereull by The Serjant Porter
Thomas Penyngton by Thomas Penyngton
William Trussell by William Trussell
Henry Lisle by Henry Lisle
Nicholas Lisley by Nicholas Lisley

In the abovementioned Roll the Entry is only Knyghts made at the Coronacion off the Queene.

NUMB. LVIII.


Item on the 21 day of Novembre was my Lorde Prince receyvied in manner, as ensueth, by Watter, when he came to his Creation—on the 29 of Novemb, when the King went to dinar
dinar my Lord Prince held the towelle, the Lord Stourton bar
the water, therle of Northumberland took Say, the Lorde
Mautravers, and the Lorde Grey Ruthyn hilde the baflyn, and
the remenant waited on the Sewer, and bare dishes, that is
to say, Thomas West sone and heire to the Lord Lawar, John
Saint John, Henry Vernon, John Haslings, William Griffith, Wil-
liam Tyndall, Nicholas Mongomery, William Uvedall, Matthew
Broome, Thomas Darcy, Thomas Cheyney, Edmond Gorges, Waul-
tier Denes, William Scotte, and John Gyse, and then their Ef-
quiers Gouvernours, that was apointed by my Lorde the
King's Chamberlain, that is to say, to await upon the Prince
Thomas Brandon, and Thomas of Breretou.

James Hide
John Parker, which John em-
ployed the money other-
wise, that he had receipved
of the Seetours for that caufe,
and not to his worship,

John Baret
Henry Uvedall

John Griffith
John Stanshaw

David Beaupre, male for by
him the th'office of Armes
loft moche of hir dewtie

Edward Benefede
Richart Fifer

Thomas Morteimer
Nicholas Audeby

Thomas Digby

John Fortescu
Christopher Longdale

Richard Wrotesley
Thomas Thorp

John Leighton
Stephen Dyngley

John Carleton
Thomas Ferres

On therle of Northumberland

On the Lord Mautravers

On the Lord Grey Ruthyn

On the Lord Stourton

On Sir Thomas West,

On Sir John St. John

On Sir Henry Vernon

On Sir John Haslings

On Sir William Griffith

On Sir William Tyndall
And when it was night, and the Princes Bayn was prepared in the Kings Clofet, and in the Entre between the Parlament Chambre, and the Chapelle, were the Baynes off therle off Northumberlond, and the Lord Mautravers, and the Lord Gray Rutbyn, and all the remenant ware in the Parlament Chambre, in ordre as abouewritten. And the King in his perfon gaue them the advertifment of thordre Knyghode, and that fame seafon were al thos of the Kings chappell redyng the Sauter for the good speed of the Quen, wiche then traviled, and anon upon ix of the cloke that fame nyght she was delivered of a Princesse, wiche was criftened on Seint Andreus day, yn Westmynf cherche: And on the morn, when the Prince had herd his mafs, he was, with al his forsaied company, prively convent throught Seynt Stephens Chappell to the netherend of the Steirs toward the Vicars logyng, wher he tooke his hors, and the remenant in the pales at the Sterchambre their foot, toke ther hors, and therll of Essex bore the Princes Sword, and Spores, and too they roode aboute the Standard in the Pales into Westmynfster Hall, the Prince formeft, and the cder folowyng in order after ther Baynes, and before the Kings Benche thei alighted of their horses, and fo proceeded into the Whitt-

hall,
hall, and stode along by the side table, in tyme the Kyng came, and when the King was comyn, the Marquis of Barkley, and therill of Arundell led the Prince to the presence, and therill of Oxonford great Chamberleyne of Englonde toke of therill of Essex the Sword and the Spores, and then presented the right spore to the King, the Kyng commaunded the Marques of Barkley to sett hit on the Princes ryght Hele, and lykewise did therill of Arundell on the lyft hele the toder spore, And then the Kyng gard on his Sworde, and dubbed hym Knyght, and after al his companye in Ordre, commaundyng oder Lordis, and Knyghtis to present them, and to sett on ther spores; and when the Kyng had dubbed al those Knyghtys, he create a Pursuivant for the Prynce, and named hym Walyngford. And when the Prince had offered his Sword, and forgon his Spores, he went eft to the Kyngis closet, and put upon hym his Robes of Afiate &c. — All the oder new mad Knyghtys sat along the on side the Chambre &c. — After the largeffe of the Prince, the largeffe of the oder new made Knyghtys was also cryed, and after dyner, Sir William Uvedall was choyn, and gave the Kyng thankyngs in the name of all his Companie &c.

In the Roll above quoted thefe are not entituled Knights of the Bath, but only entred under the Style of Knyghts made at the Creacion off Prynce Arthur.

NUMB. LIX.


A. D. 1494, 10 H. 7. The King being determyned at Alhalowyn tide then folowing to holde and to kepe roially and solenmly that feste &c. and at that feste to doubse his iide fon Knyght of the Bath and after to creat hym Duc of Torc, and there upon directed his lettres miïfve, and allsoe writts accordyng to the same, to divers nobles of this his Roialme to be of his sonnis Bayne, and to receive thordre of Knyght-hod, of wiche at his commandement came xxii, as schaull follow after in this Booke, and remanent were pardened, or wer at their fynt &c. On the morne after Simon and Jude the Prince was conveyed to Westm. And on Thursday the xxx day of October, the said Lord Henry servd the Kyng of towell, and the Lord Haryngton toke to sey, and the Lord F Clyfford
Clyfford hild the bafen, and the Lord Fitzwaren bere the wat-er, the Lord Dacre of the Sowthe bere the Kyngs potage, Mr. Thomas Stanley, and the remanent bere dishes at the surfe
course, or the iide, and the Lordes Serviturs, and the oder
nobles, sum dyed in the Chambre, and the remanent fatt
in the Hall, sum at my Lord Stewards table, and sum at
maft Controller Table, and after in like wife soo did they
fope, and when it was nyght, and that their Baynes were
redy furft in the Kyngs clofett was the Lord Henry's Bayne
roiably dressed and a riche bed well empairelled, and therll
of Oxinford red the advertifement, and then the Kyng toke
of the water and putt on his Schulder, and made a Crosse
and tryft hit, and from thens went into the Quenes clofet,
and likewyrse advertised the Lord Haryngton, and the Lord
Clyfford, and from thens went into the Parlement Chambre
where wer xx Baynes and beddis, wiche hadden sparvors, and
the best ordred that I have seen, and as folowyth, furft in
that chambre was the Lord Fitzwaren, the Lord Dacre
of the Sowthe, Sir Thomas Stanley son and heir of the Lord
Strange.

Sir John Arundell, Sir Walter Gryffithe,
Sir Gervoys of Clifton,
Sir Edmond Trafford,
Sir Robert Harrecourt,
Sir Henry Marney,
Sir Roger Neubough,
Sir Rauff Rider,
Sir Thomas Bawde,
Sir John Speak,
Sir Humfry Fullford,
Sir Robert Litten,
Sir Piers Eggecombe,
Sir Robert Clere,
Sir Thomas Fairfax,
Sir Richard Knyghtley,
Sir John Chooke.

And after that the Kyng, of his Grace, and benevolens had
viseted them all in their Baynes, he departed into his Cham-
bre, and thenne when they wer dry in their bedds they wer
revested in theyre heremits wede, and soo departed to the
Chapell, where they had Spices and their voidie, and the
Sergent of Confectionary had of every Knyght a noble, and
on the Morne erley every man was shreven, and herde theyr
meffe, doying all Observance therto belonging, returned to
thair beddys and delivered their Russet gowne to the myn-
ffirells, and it was fo well ordred and the howse soo well
voiced, and thenn kept, that they toke good reft, and anon
after
after as it was day, and that they were awaked, they well
and liberally paid the money to th'officiers of Armes, that
is to fey, the Lord Haryngton son and heyre of the Lord
Marquis Dorsett 1s. and every Baron above named xl s. and
everyche of the remanent xx s. Item they paid to the Ser-
gent of thewry every man xx s iv d. Item they rewarded the
Ufiers, and the grome porter, and there Efiuieres of honnour
liberally, and yet they made a commune purse. When the
tyme was come that it was the Kyngs pleasir that they
schuld arise, therll of Oxinford, therll of Notumberland, the
Erll of Essex, the Lord Daubney with oder, whent to the faid
Lord Henry, and from hym to the Lord Haryngton and therll
of Oxinford great Chamberlayn of England gave him hys
Sherett, and after hym the oder nobles did allfoo gyven part
of theyt Abblements, and allfoo my Lord of Oxinford with
the forfaid Lords honnored them with his honde, gevynig them
all their Sherotts in ordre as above, and after as there beddis
fnode in ordre. And immediatly after that they wer redy,
they toke their waye secretly by our Ladie of Pieu throught
Saint Stephin's Chappell on to the fteyr foote of the Ster
Chambre end, where they toke their horsses, wiche in died
wer fimple and foo lytill of valeur, and not to the wor-
shipp of Knyghthood, and that the olde Ordonance was, that
thoos hors empairelled after the Cuftume schuld be Fee to the
Marishall of England, or 1oo s. and in his abcenfe to the Ma-
rishalls of the Kyngs hall, confydering that thoos hors for
the moft part wer fo fimple, and for an example, that oder
heraft efter schuld come with better hors, and more honorably,
for this oons my Lord Marishall by thavys of his chiff Coun-
ceill toke of every man xl s. for this tyme oonly and par-
doned the value of iii l. and delivered there hors ageyn: and
the Lord William Courteney bere the faid Lord Henry Swerde
and spo:es, the pomel upward, and when he did alight of
his hors, Sir William Sanddis bere hym to the Kyngs prefsen,
and there therll of Oxinford toke the fwerd and spo:es, and
presented the right spo:e to the Kyng, and the Kyng com-
manded the Duc of Buckingham to putt hit on the right Hele
of the faid Lord Henry, and in likewise the lifft spo:e to the
Lord Marques of Dorsett, and thenne the Kyng gird his
fwo:ede abowt hym, and after dubbed hym Knyght in ma-
ner accuftumed, and then fett hym upon the Table in tyme

[ 43 ]

the
the Kyng hade in like fourme doubed the Lords, and Sir Thomas Stanley &c. thenne Sir William Sandys bere my Lord Henry into the Chappell, and there at the high Aultre ofred his fwerd, and the Lords after in ordre, and after all the Knyghts as they wer doubted, and when my Lord was come out of the Qwere dore, the Kyngs maister Cooke toke his spores for his Fee, and in likewyse of every oder Knyght and a Noble. My said Lord dined in his owne Chambre, and the oder Lords, and new doubted Knyghtes dined in the Parlement Chambre att a long table, all on oon fyde, and their Esquiers of honnour kerved before them, and the Kyng licensed them to ett their metts, bycause hyt was fastyng day, and after diner all thes new made Knights went into a great Chambre, and did off their mantells, furcotts, gyrdils, and coyffes, and delivered them to thofficiers of Armes, never better, and thenne clothed thaym in blew gownes with hodes, and immediately after they went to Counfeill, and chose Sir Rob. Litton to gyve the Kyngs Grace thankyngs.

Writs under the Great Seal for creating these Knights are en
tred in C. 34. in Off. Arm. p. 127.

Stow. p. 477. mentioneth these Persons to have been than made Knights, but doth not add Knights of the Bath.

In G. 2. penes me p. 347, 350 are the Names of their Esquires
Knights of the Bath made at the Creation of the Duke of Tork Henry Anno 10 of Hen. 7, with their Esquires of Ho
nour on Allhallowen Even.

Knights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Duke of Tork</th>
<th>Esquires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thomas Brandon</td>
<td>Richard Fuify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richard Haslings</td>
<td>Thomas Digby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William Morgan</td>
<td>Edward Skelton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthony Fetyplas</td>
<td>Edward Wadham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William Bulstrode</td>
<td>Thomas Woodshawe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John Parker</td>
<td>William Trefry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir John Arundell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Thomas Stanley</td>
<td>Thomas Nevil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Walter Griffith</td>
<td>George Bekynsall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Gervase Clifton</td>
<td>William Mornige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Robert Hardecourt</td>
<td>Edward Befired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Edward Trafford</td>
<td>His Brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Henry Marney</td>
<td>John Burley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Thomas Bawd</td>
<td>John Carlton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir John Speak</td>
<td>John Burley</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Sir Roger Newburgh | Thomas Wynfre |}
| Sir Humphry Fulford | John Amereton |
| Sir Robert Lytton | Robert Gethyns |
| Sir Piers Edgcombe | Walter Wingfeild |
| Sir Robert Clere | John Sharp |
| Sir Thomas Fairfax | Henry Udall |
| Sir Richard Knightley | Richard Marsh |
| Sir John Cheoke | Christopher Vycent |

In the abovementioned Rolle the Entry is only Knyghts made at the Creation of Henry Duke of Yorke.
Knights of the Bayne made at the Marriage of Prince Arthur,
17 Nov. 1501. 17 Hen. vii.

The Lord Wylloughby,
The Lord Clinton,
The son and heir of the Lord
Haftings, George,
Sir Thomas Fenys,
Sir Gryffythe ap Sir Ryes Thomas
Sir Robert Corbet,
Sir John Wogan,
Sir Thomas Laurence,
Sir Henry Rogers,
Sir William Walgrae,
Sir William Seymour,
Sir Robert Throgmorton,
Sir John Basset,
Sir Thomas Grenesfeld,
Sir John Arundel of Treris,
Sir Roger Strange,
Sir John Scrop of Castlecomb,
Sir John Paulet,
Sir Walter Baskervyle,
Sir Robert Waterton,
Sir John Gyfford,
Sir John Aflon,
Sir William Pyloll,
Sir Thomas Ingilfeld,
Sir William Martyn,
Sir William Callwey,
Sir George Putnam,
Sir Nicholas Beron,
Sir Thomas Hawte,
Sir Richard Warr,
Sir Alnathe Malyverer,
Sir William Rede,
Sir John Trevelyan,
Sir John Foster,
Sir Walter Strykeland,
Sir Thomas Long,
Sir John Philpot,
Sir John Lee of Wylthur,
Sir William Hartwell,
Sir Nicholas Gryffyn,
Sir Lancelot Thyrkyll,
Sir John Norton,
Sir Roger Ormeslon,
Sir George Fedyngye,
Sir Thomas Curwyn,
Sir Hugh Loder,
Sir Thomas Sampson,
Sir Richard Fowler,
Sir Thomas Woodhouse,
Sir Philip Bothe,
Sir John Iwardby,
Sir Henry Frowyk,
Sir John Leghe of Stokewell,
Sir William Afcu,
Sir Thomas Kemp,
Sir Morgan Kydwelle,
Sir John Gyllot.

In the Roll they are stiled Knights of the Bath.

In the Ceremony of this Marriage, recited at large in M. 13.
in Off. Arm. p. 50b 51. it is remembred. "And that night
such as were appoyntid to be Knights of the Bathe re-
paired to their Baynes to the number of 1viii, and there
that night the Kyng himself gaue unto fyue of them
" ther
"their charges, after thordre and Lawe of the Bathe, and commaunded therl of Oxinford gret Chamberleyn of England, under and by vertue of his auctoryte, after the same fourme to encharge the remnaunt, &c." The morrow of the Wedenysday next followyng, the Knights of the Bathe, that had entred into the beginnyng and certen requiits apperteynyng after the Lawe of Armys unto thordre, and degree of the Bathe were warnyd, and afligned unto their attendaunce uppon the Kings, grace to haue and enjoye the perfecte accomplisfemen of all the necessaie poyntes, and dueties to that Solempne, and highe Knighthod apperteynyng, and fo they were redy, and gau their diligens, and wayting with ther horfys, swords, with their sporys uppon their helys, and that shuld be for them nedfull, and there were by the Kings hand in his great chambre at his Carpet, and under his ryche clothe of Eftate dubyd, and girtid with their swords: They shuld aredyn afo that tyme in their rialtie, but of that they were pardoned, bycaufe the weder was not clere, ne convenient bycaufe of moch wete. There was also at that seafon addid by the Kings will and pleasure xviii moo Knights, that had not been in the Baynes, and were dubyd Knights with the reherfid nombre of lviii. So in all there were threfcore and xvi, whereof so great a nombre, and multitude haue not been seen had tofore in England at oon seafon made.

**Num. LXI.**

*Creatio Principis Henr. 19 Hen. vii. 18 Febr. in the Rol:* formerly cited of Knights.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Vifcount Lisle</th>
<th>Sir Mylys Buffi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Lord Dacres of the North</td>
<td>Sir Edward Pomery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas</td>
<td>Sir John Mordant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Brian Stapilton,</td>
<td>Sir James Hubert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir Rauff Gray,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Num. LXII.**

*WT. in Offic. Arm. p. 55b*

Devise for the Coronation of Hen. viii.

—Also in a Rayfing—the anycent Nobles of England, the King hath appointed Twenty fix of the moft able personnes, and of Honourable Blood, and auncient houfes comen, being noe Knights of this his Realme, to take the order of Knighthood,
Knighthood, and to repare unto the Tower of London the twenty second day of June, and that day to serue the King of his Dinner, and they that shall bee made Knights to beare Dishes unto the Kinge that faid day, in token that they shall never bare none after that day, and to be made Knights of the Bathe in the Tower of London the twenty third day of June next comeing, called the Even of his Coronation, and that all manner things that belongeth to fome great a Tryumphe may be done Honorable and orderly disposed, whose names doth followe in Order, as they were made, viz.

Richard Ratclyff, Lord Fytzwater
The Lord Scroope of Bolton,
The Lord Fitzhugh,
The Lord Mountjoye,
The Lord Dawbeney,
The Lord Brooke,
Sir Morris Barkeley,
Sir Henry Clyfford,
Sir Thomas Knevet,
Sir Andrew Wyndfor,
Sir Thomas Parre,
Sir Thomas Bouleyne,
Sir Richard Wentworth,
Sir Henry Owtred.

The Order of the Creations of the Knights of the Bathe to be understanđ by the Herraulds, and to be conveyed.

That done the Kinges at his pleafure may goe unto his dinner, and that day as hath binn accustomed, such noble perfonnes, as are then made Knights of the Bathe in order, as they were made to fyte in the Hall at one Board, yf it may bee, or at two Boards, and there to bee ferved honourably, and their Squires to attend them.

Numb. LXIII.

WT. in Offic. Arm. E. x penes me p. 19. E. xi p. 207b
The Receiving, Conveying, and Coronation of the Queene Anne [of Bullen, on Frydaye 30 May 1533, 25 Hen. 8.]

In the morrowe at dynner, ferved the King all such as were appoynted by his Highnes to bee Knights of the Bathe, which after dinner were brought by their Chambers, and that
that night were bathed, and shreven, according to the old
usage of England, and the next day in the morning, the
King dubed them according to the Ceremonyes there to be-
longing, whose names heere ensue.

The Marques Dorset,
The Earl of Derby,
The Lord Clifford [son and heir to the Earl of Cumberland,]
The Lord Fitzwater [son and heir to the Earl of Suffolk,]
The Lord Hasting [son and heir to the Earl of Huntingdon,]
The Lord Montegle,
The Lord Vaux,
Sir Henry Parker [son and heir to the Lord Morley,]
Sir William Windsor [son and heir to the Lord Windsor,]
Sir John Mordaunt [son and heir to the Lord John Mordaunt]
Sir Francis Weston,
Sir Thomas Arundell,
Sir John Hulsefon,
Sir Thomas Poyning,
Sir Henry Savell,
Sir George Fitzwilliams of Lincolnshire,
Their Names in G. 2. penes me, p. 354.

Num. LXIV.
E. xiii. penes me, p. 54.
The Apparel for the Bathe for the Noble Prince, Prince Edward.
Imprimis, a longe goune of Ruffet fatten made in maniere
of an hermits goune.

Item, a mantell and Circote of redde fatten, or velvett fur-
red, and edged with whyte mynever with longe lafes of
whyte filke, with two tassells for the same with a pere of
whyte gloues hanginge at them.

Item, a longe blew violet goun furred and edged with
whyte mynever, lyke unto the robe of a Bachelor of the
Law, and a lafe of whyte filke set on the lefte sholder.

Item, a Coyfe, and a pere of nether corfs.

Item, a pere of hose and filke blacke, the folles of black
lether called * Chaflambles.

Item, a pere of spurres of copper and gilte.

* That is, Chaflles Semelles de cuir, mentioned in the Ceremonial.
Item, a swourde, the hilts gilte, lyk an arming swourd, the scabbard and girdell of whyt velvett withoute any harneys.

Then the Apparell for the creation of the noble Prince, Prince Edward, is specified, and also the robes of the Parlement for the noble Prince, Prince Edward.

Ibid. p. 56

Item, the Kings Highnesse must directe his Lettres to be made to suche, as shall be made Knights of the Bathe, and to receive the Order of Knighthood in the mornenge of the fayde Creacion, and Garter to have their names to prepare for suche things, as to that apperteynethe.

**Numb. LXV.**

For the Bath at the Coronation of K. Edward VI.

Knights nomynate of the Bathe the daye of the Kings Majesties Coronation, the xx daye of February, Anno 1546.

E. xi. p. 217


Sir George Norton, Sir Valentine Knightley, Sir Robert Lytton, Sir George Vernon,

Sir John Porte, Sir Thomas Joffelyn, Sir Edmond Moleneux, serjeant of the law,

Sir Christopher Barker, Garter King at Armes,

Sir James Halles, Sir William Bapthorpe, Sir Thomas Brykenell, Sir Thomas Nevell,

Sir Angell Mareyn Italien de Cremona,


W. T.
It was ordained, that a certain number of Knights should be made instead of the Bath, because the time was too short, that they could not be made of the Bath, according to the Ceremonies thereunto appertaining.

Then it was at the same time ordered by the Kings Royal Majesty, with the advice of his most noble Council, that they should be made by his Highness, being crowned instead of the Bath, as aforesaid, and so Sir William Paget Secretary did read their names, and they were called by Quarter Principal King at Arms, to receive, as after followeth, &c.

Then because they were nominate of the Bath, and made with soe great Royaltie, they were commanded to pay the Dewtyes of money, every of them after their Degrees, and Estates, double the same of other Knights.

**Acta Conc. Priv. i Ed. 6. Sunday 6 Febr. at the Tower,** this day also according to thorder concluded upon by thauitorite aforesaid, and by vertue of the Kings Majesties letters Patents under the great Seale made forth unto the Lord Protector, authorizing him so to doe, Our said sovereign lord and Master that now is, received the high and Noble Order of Knighthood by the said lord Protectours hands, &c.

**Numb. LXVI.**

*Patr i Mar. p. 2. m. io 3.*

*Mary, by the Grace of God, &c. To all men, to whome these presents shall come, Greetinge.*

Where, for the more adornment of our Kingly Estate, and dignitye Riall, and for the nobility of blode, good service, and other good qualities of many our servants, and other subiects, We be resolued to call certain of them to the ordre of Knighthood.

We let you wit, that, for the special trusste, and confidence, which we have repofed in our right trusste and right well-belovid Cosyn and Counfealoure Henry Erle of Arundell, we have appoynted, and by these presentes do appoint, and auctorise him, for Us, and in our Name, and by our authority, to doe, and exercyse everie thinges and thinges in our behalfe to be doone and exercisid, for the full making of such, and so manye persons Knightes, within
the time of two days next ensuing the date hereof, as by us shall be named, or by himself may be thought mete, so as he exceed not in the whole the Number of Three-score.

And our farther pleasure is, that everie person, so to be advanced, or made Knight by our said Coynyn and Counselloure, shall have, hold, and enjoy the said Order of the Knightwood, with the Name, Title, Dignitie, and all other Prerogatives thereunto-belonginge, in as large and ample manner, as anie other Knighte, or Knights of like Degree, being made in the tyme of our Progenitors, have, and of right ought to have had, or enjoyed.

_in cujus rei, &c._

_Testa Regina apud Westm. decimo septimo die Octobris._

_Per ipsum Regem._


**Num. LXVII.**

_W. T. in Officio Armorum, p. 123._

Coronation of Queen Mary.

Also in raising the auncient Nobles of England, the Queenes Highnes appoynted xv of the most able persons, and of Honorable Blood and Auncient houses, being noe Knights of this her realme, to take the Order of Knighthood, and to repayre unto her Towre of London on Fryday the 28th of September, the day after her Graces coming thither. And there according to the Order every man to beare unto the Queenes Majestie at her first course for dyner, a Dish of meate, who after were brought to their Chamber, and the same night were Bathed and Shrevin, according to the olde usage of England, and the next day in the morninge after Maffe, in the Queenes Majesties Presence, being under her Clothe of Estate in the Chamber of Presence, were dubbed Knights by the Earle of Arrundell, Lord Steward of the Queenes house, which had Commisson of her Grace to doe the same, and that according to the Ceremony thereto belonging, whose names hereafter doe ensewe, and the names of the Esquiers which did attend upon them, _viz._

George White and George Terrell The Earl of Devonshire,
Ralph Chandler and Mr. Drewry The Earl of Surreys son,
Mr Tanner and William Rifer The Lord of Cardiff.
Mr Arundell and Mr Norreys The Lord of Burgavenny.
Mr Frankwell, Mr Evered, The Lord Barkley.
Mr Hogat, Mr Markham, The Lord Lomley.
Mr Harman, Mr Brakenbury, The Lord Mountjoy.
Mr Winkefeld, Mr Jo. Barkley, Sir Hen. Clinton [son of Lord Clinton]
Robert Allen, Richard Foster, Sir William Pallet [son of Lord St. Johns]
Richard Wight, Mr Sackfeld, Sir Hugh Rich [son of Lord Rich]
Robert Warner, Edmond Lisley, Sir Henry Paget [son of Lord Paget]
George Nevel, Mr Smyth, Sir Henry Parker.
Robert Grewe, Mr Manwayring, Sir Rob. Rochester (Comptroller)
George Jerningham, Mr Legens, Sir Henry Jerningham.
Mr Dauncy, Anthony Maxell, Sir William Damer.

The Order of their Ceremony aforesaid, was understood by the Office of Armes, and soe convey’d unto the place appoynted for them to dyne, and that every man in order, as they were made Knights fete at one Table, And as the Order was all on one syde, and there were served honorably, and theire Esquiers attendant on them till after dynner, and then tooke theire leave every man of his Knight, of whome he had the Governance, and received their Fees according as the Officers of Armes declared by theire antient President.

Num. LXVIII.
G. 2. penes me p. 360.

The Order of the Knights of the Bath at the Coronation of Queen Mary.

First on Friday all the Knights came into the Tower, and came into the Chamber of Presence, and there the Gentlemen Ushers did sweare them, and then all they did goe and eate a morseff of meate, And at the second course every one of them did beare a dith to the Queene, and did kneele downe, and did take the Sayes. And then the Gentlemen Ushers did lead them into the Great Tower, whereas the Bath was, and so there they remayned till fixe a clocke at night, and then the table was covered, and a Bankett fett on it, And then every Knight
Knight was ledd betwixt the Esquires unto the said Banquet, And soe they were sett all on one syde, and the Esquires did waite on them ; And when the banquet was ended, their Esquires did lead them into the Bath chamber agen with Harrolds going before them, And all the Banket tyme the Sag-buts and Violls did playe ; And after that all the said Knights were shaven, saving those that the Quene did pardon, And that done, they did put off all their Clothes, and did putt on a lynnen Breech, and so theire Feete were washed, and satt in the Bath all nakyd, till that my Lord of Arundell, my Lord Chamberlyn, the Master of the Horfes, Secretary Peter and Sir Thomas Wharton presenting the Quenes perfon did come and reade to them this serten Othe. Right Dear Brother Grett worship be this Ordre unto every of you, and Almighty God give you praying of all Knighthood, Thys ys the ordre of Knighthood, You sall honour God above all things, You shall be stedfaft in the Faith of Holly Church, and the fame maynteyne, and defende to your Power, You sall love your Soveraigne above all erthly Cretures, And for your Soveraines right live and die, You sall defend Widowes, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, You sall suffer no extorcyon, as far forth as you maie, nor fitt in place, where any wrongfull judgement shall be given to your knowledge, and as great Honour be this noble Order unto you, as ever it was to any of your Progenitors ; and that done they went all to their bedds, and so slept till about iv of the clocke in the morning, and then they did arife, being foundyd with the miniftrells, and did putt on their clothes and apparell Ruflett, like Bachelors of the Lawe with a Hood furryd with white Menyver, and being leade with both their Esquires to the Chappell, and then ymediautely were thriven, and then certaine servis and masse was said, All they did offer a little taper with two pence, or a got in it ; And that don, all they receaved the Sacrament, and then they were led holme againe into ther Chambers, whereas the Bathing tubbs were taken awaie, and so they went unto their bedds, and about eight of the Clock on the Saterdaie there came fertyeyn Knights, and did putt on their Shirts and doubllts, and so they did arise and make them ready, and then every one of them did put on a Cyrcott of red Taffeta, and mantle of red Taffeta with a grett face of white silke with a grett knopp of gold thereuppon, And a
paires of gloves tyed in the midst of the said lace. And about
e leven of the clocke of the same daie, they went downe lede
betwixt two Knights, every one of them having a Page well
appointed beaing a Sword with a gilt pomell and a white Scar-
bert of Velvet without any Chape, having a paires of gilt
Spurrs hanging about the hylts of the feyd Sworde, and their
two Esquires going before them, and entering out of the said
Tower or chamber, every Page and his Knight did leape on
their horses, the Knyghts horses having every one a blacke le-
ther Saddle with white egge, a longe rayne, and a broad rayne
egyd with white alfo, and the headtall of the bridle having a
Croffe of latyn guilded, and the Patrell having a Croffe likewise.
And so they did ride to the Hall dore, and ther di alight and
so went into the Hall, and ther stood a both Sides on the Hall,
till the Lord Chamberleyne sent to the Quene, and answer being.
brought from the Quene, the Page and his two Esquires went
before him, hee being ledd betwixt his two Knights upp into
the Chamber of Preference, where the Quene did come out,
And then he with his two Knights and his Page and his two
Esquires before him did make, coming to the Quene iii Cor-
eyes, and knelyd downe all before the Quene, and the Page did
kiffe the Sword, and delivered it to my Lord Chamberleyne knel-
ing next to the Quene, and the Quene did take the Sword, and
did geyrd it about the said Knyght, and delivered to the two
Knights that did lead him the Spurrs, and did command them
to put on the Spurrs, and laft of all comandyd to kiffe his
Knee, the one the right, and the other the left Knee, and then
they did hold their gloves betwixt their fingers, over their
heads, And my Lord of Arundell being Lord Great Master did
laye his hand upon his Shoulder, saying, Hear, be trewe
Knyghte, and so did arise. And so after all they had so don, they
did make humble Courtefies, and were ledd downe, as they came
up, saving their Pages, and so went to the Chapell, and their
did offer upp their Swords unto the Priest, and so were brought
out of the Chapell ledd with their Knights, their Esquiers then
folowinge them. And at their entring out of the Chapell their
flood a rounde table coveryd with a white Cloth, And the
Quenes master Cooke with a grett dresling knife, saying thier
words Sir Knight, see thou bee a true Knight and to performe
thine Oath, or else I will strike the off by thees Sporres, and
so
so received all their Sporres, and vi s. viii d. in money, and then they all came into the Hall, and did sett downe all on one syde, and were servyd with three Corsys at their dynners. And that don, they did putt off their red -- -- -- and did give it to the Harholds, and then every one of them did put on a vio-
et gowne close furryd with white -- -- and a hode like a ma-
ster of Art hooede, and a white -- filke without aglets, which
was tyed on the left Shoulder -- -- they take their horfys, and
did ryde togyther through London, till they came to Whitehall
next before the Counfell, and at night they changed into their
owne apparell, and the next daie of the Coronation all they
served the Queene, every man bearing a disch, and so they
made an ende bearing the iv courfes.

NUMB. LXIX.
Pat. i Eliz. p. 4. m. 5. d.

Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France, and
Ireland, Defendour of the Faith &c. To all men, to whome
theis presentes shall come GREETING.
Whereas, We
Mynding to procede to the solemnitie of our coronation, in
such and like honorable forte, as in the Coronation of oure Pro-
genitors hath been accustomed, and as to oure Estate, and Digi-
Nitie Royall apperteyneth, have, both for the more Adorne-
ment of the Feaft of our faid coronation, and for the nobilitie
of blood, good service, and other good Qualities of many our
fervauntes, and other Subjects, resolved to call certain of them
to th'ordre of Knighthood.

We let you wete, that, for the special trust and confidence,
which we have reposed in our right Trustie and right beloved
Cofen and Counsfoyler, Henry Erl of Arundell, Lord Steward of
our Houfhold, we have appoynted, and by theis presentes do
appoint and auctorifie him, for us, and in our name, and by our
auctoritie, not onlie to do and excercife everie thinge, and
things, on our behalfe to be done and excercised for the full
making of thofe Knightes of the Bathe, whom we have
caufed to be speciallye called for that purpose, but alfo to
make and ordeyn fuch, and fo many other persons Knights
within the tyme of two daies next enfuing the date here-
of, as by us shall be named, or by himself may be thought
mete;
mete; so as he exceede not in th' ole the Numbere of Thirtie.

And our further Pleasure is, that every Person, so to be advanced, or made Knight by our said Cofen and Counceilor, shall have, houlde, and enyoye the said order of Knight-hood, with the name, title, and Dignitye, and all other Prerogatyves thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight, or Knights of like degree, being made in the tyme of any our Progenitours, have, and of right ought to have had, or enjoyed.

In Witnes wherof &c.

Witness ourself at Westm. the xiv day of January,

Per ipfam Reginam.

Printed in Rymer vol. xv. p. 497.

NUMB. LXX.


Knights of the Bath at the Coronation of Qu. Eliz.

The Lord Darcy of the North, Sir John Souwche,
The Lord Sheffield, Sir Nycholas Poynes,
The Lord Darcy of Chiche, Sir John Barkeley,
Sir Robert Rich, Sir Edward Umpton,
Sir Roger North, Sir Henry Wefton,

Sir George Speke.

NUMB. LXXI.

Knights of the Bath made at the Coronation of King James, which Coronation was on 25 July 1603.

C. 15. penes me:

Sir Philip Herbert, after Earle of Montgomery. [Shropshire.]
Thomas Barkley, Lord Barkley. [Gloucestershire.]
Sir William Evers, after Lord Evers. [Yorkshire.]
Sir George Wharton, after Lord Wharton. [Yorkshire.]
Sir Robert Rich, after Earle of Warwicke. [Essex.]
Sir Robert Carre, of the Bed-chamber of his Majestie, after Earl of Somerset. [Northumberland.]
Sir John Egerton, after Earle of Bridgewater. [Cheshire.]
Sir Henry Compton, third Brother to William Earle of Northampton.
Sir Thomas Erskine, sonne to the Earle of Marre. [Starling.]
Sir William Austuddur. [Lowdean.]
Sir Patricke Murray. [Murray.]
Sir James Hay Lord Ifler. [Glasgow.]
Sir John Lyndsey. [Lowdean.]
Sir Richard Preston, after Earl of Desmond. [Northumberland.
Sir Oliver Cromwell of Huntingdonshire. [Huntingdon.]
Sir Edward Stanly of Lauceashire.
Sir William Herbert of Montgomery, after Lord Powys. [Montgo-
mercy.]
Sir Foulke Grevell, after Lord Brooke. [Warwick.]
Sir Francis Fame, after Earl of Westmerland. [Kent.]
Sir Robert Chichester, of Devonshire.
Sir Robert Knowles of Berkshire.
Sir William Clifton of Notinghamshire. [Huntingdon] [Som-
erset.]
Sir Francis Fortescue of Devonshire. [Bucks] [Oxon.]
Sir Edward Corbet of Shropshire.
Sir Edward Herbert, after Lord of Castle-Iland in Ireland, and
Baron Chirbury. [Montgomery.]
Sir Thomas Langton of Lauceashire.
Sir William Pope of Oxfordshire.
Sir Arthur Hopton of Somersetshire.
Sir Charles Morison Knight and Baronet of Hartfordshire.
[Northampton.]
Sir Francis Leigh of Warwickshire. [Surrey.]
Sir Edward Mountagu, after Lord Mountague of Boughton in
Northamptonshire. [Leicestershire.]
Sir Edward Stanbop of Yorkshire. [Northampton.]
Sir Peter Manwood of Kent.
Sir Robert Harley of Herefordshire.
Sir Thomas Strickland of Yorkshire.
Sir Christopher Hatton of Northamptonshire.
Sir Edward Griffin of Northamptonshire. [Leicestershire.]
Sir Robert Bevill of Huntingdonshire.
Sir Edward Harwell of Worcestershire.
Sir John Mallet of Somersetshire.
Sir Walter Aston of Staffordshire Knight and Baronet.
Sir Henry Gawdy of Essex. [Norfolk.]
[59]

Sir Richard Musgrave of Westmoreland Knight and Baronet.

[Cumberland.]
Sir John Stowell of Somersetshire.
Sir Richard Amcots of Lincolnshire.
Sir Thomas Leeds of Suffolk. [Suffex.]
Sir Thomas Fermyn of Norfolke. [Suffolk.]
Sir Ralph Hare of Hartford. [Norfolk.]
Sir William Forster of Buckinghamshire. [Berks.]
Sir George Speake of Somersetshire. [Devonshire.]
Sir Anthony Felton of Suffolk. [Suffolk.]
Sir Anthony Brown of Northamptonshire. [Lincoln.]
Sir Thomas Wife of Essex. [Devon.]
Sir Robert Chamberlaine of Oxfordshire.
Sir Anthony Palmer of Suffolk. [Suffex.] [Kent.]
Sir Edward Heron of Lincolnshire.
Sir Henry Burton of Leicestershire. [Surr.]
Sir Robert Barker of Suffolk.
Sir William Norris of Lancashire.
Sir Roger Bodenham of Herefordshire.

Number 62.

King James 22 July in his first Year commissions four of the Nobility to exercise every Thing for the full making of Knights of the Bath, and to make so many other Persons Knights, within the Time of two Days next ensuing the Date, as by the King shall be named, or by them, or any three, or two of them, so as they exceed not in the whole the Number of threescore. G. 2, penes me p. 330.

Numb. LXXII;
G. 2. penes me p. 263.

James &c. To all &c. Greeting, Whereas we minding to proceed to the Solemnity of our Coronation in such like honourable Sort, as in the Coronations of Our Progenitors hath been accustomed, and as to Our State, and Dignity Royal appertaineth, have, both for the more Advancement of the Feast of our said Coronation, and for the Nobility of Blood, good Service, and other good Qualities of many our Servants and other our Subjects, resolved to call certain of them to the Order of Knighthood, We let you weet, that for the espertiall Trufty and Confidence, which we have reposed in Our Right

H 2
Trufty, and well beloved Cousins and Councillors, Edward Earl of Worcester our Earl Marshal of England, Charles Earl of Nottingham our High Admiral of England, Thomas Earl of Suffolk our Chamberlain of our House, and our right Trufty and well-beloved John Lord Lumley, We have appointed, and by these Prefents do appoint, and authorize them, or any three of them, or any two of them for us, and in our Name, and by our Authority, not only to do and exercise every thing and things in our behalf to be done and exercised for the full making of Knights of the Bath, whome we have caus'd to be especially callen for that purpose, but also to make and ordain such, and so many other Persons Knights within the time of two days next ensuing the Date hereof, as by us shall be named, or by them, or any three, or two of them may be thought meet, so as they exceed not in the whole the Number of Sixty: And our farther Pleasure is, that every Person to be advanced, or made Knight by our said Commissioners, or any three, or two of them shall have, hold, and enjoy the said Order of Knighthood with the Name, Title, Dignity, and all Prerogatives thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight, or Knights of like Degree, being made in the time of any our Progenitors have, and of right ought to have had, and enjoyed. In Witness &c. 22 July, anno regni Anglia &c. primo & Scotia xxxvi.

NUMB. LXXIII.

On Saturday being Twelfth Even the fifth of January 1604. [2 Jac. 1.] at Whitehall, Charles Duke of Albany the King's Son was made Knight of the Bath, and with him xi others,

Charles, Duke of Torke.
Sir Robert Bartu, Lord Willoughby of Eresby, after Earl of Lindsey.
Sir William Compton, Lord Compton, after Earl of Northampton.
Sir Grey Bridges, Lord Chandos.
Sir Francis Norris, Lord Norris, of Ricot, after Earl of Berkshire.
Sir William Cecill [Son and Heir to the Viscount Cranborne,] after Earl of Salisbury.
Sir Allan Percy, brother to Henry Earl of Northumberland.
Sir Francis Mannions, after Earl of Rutland.
Sir Francis Clifford, brother to the Earl of Cumberland,
C. 15. and also in G. 2. p. 367.
Sir Thomas Somerset of Caffell in Ireland, [second son to
the Earl of W'orcest're.]
Sir Thomas Howard, [second sonne to the Earl of Suffolk] after Earl of Berkes'hire.
Sir John Harrington, sonne [and heir] to John Lord Har-
rington of Exton.

NUMB. LXXIV.

G. 2. penes me, p. 375.

The Duke, being but four Years old, was carried, and
in the Morning had on his Hermits Weeds, not of Fryers-
gray, (as the rest of the Knights had) but of a Russet Sat-
tin; after Service they all shifted into Robes of Crimson
Taffata, wherein they were made, fat at Dinner in, and at
Evening Prayer offered up their Swords, which they pre-
fently redeemed with an Angel in Gold, the next Day
they were all in Purple Sattin, wherein they dined, having
a white Lace on the Shoulder. The next Day following
(being Twelth-Day and Sunday) the said Duke was created:
Duke of York, in Manner and Form following, &c.

Shortly after the said Duke, and the Noblemen aforesaid,
came into the great Chamber, where they all dined, at a
Table set cros, a little beneath the Cloth of Estate, then
there placed, and at a Side-Table, over-against the Chim-
ney fat the Knights of the Bath, &c. Memorand. That
after the Knights of the Bath came the first time out of
the Chappell, they had their Oaths given them in the Gal-
lery, and after they went, and shifted themselves into their
Robes of Crimson Taffata, as before.

NUMB. LXXV.

1 Cerem. in Offic. Arm. p. 220.

The second of June [1610.] these undernamed and chosen to
be of the Order of the Bath, by Bill signed with the King's
Hand, repaired to Durham-House in the Afternoon.

Henry Vere, Earl of Oxford.
George Lord Gordon, [son and heir to the Earl of Huntley]:
after Marquifs Huntley.
Henry Lord Clifford, after Earl of Cumberland.

Henry Ratcliffe, Lord Fitzwater [son and heir to the Earl of Suffolk.]


Francis Lord Hay, [son and heir to the Earl of Athol in Scotland] after Earl of Carlile.

James Lord Erskine, [son and heir to the Earl of Mar in Scotland.]

Thomas Windsor, then Lord Windsor.

Thomas Lord Wentworth, after Earl of Cleveland.

Sir Charles Somerfet, [third] sonne to Edward Earl of Worcester.

Sir Edward Somerfet, [fourth] sonne to the said Earl of Worcester.

Sir Thomas Ratcliffe, sonne to the Earl of Suffolk.

Sir Francis Stuart, sonne to the Earl of Murray.

Sir William Styard, sonne to the Lord Blantyre.

Sir Ferdinando Sutton, eldest sonne to the Lord Dudley.

Sir Henry Cary, [sonne and heir to the Lord Hunsdon] after Earl of Dover.

Sir Oliver St. John, Lord St. John [sonne and heir to the Lord St. John of Bletso] after Earl of Bulingbrook.

Sir Gilbert Gerrard [sonne and heir to the Lord Gerrard] after Lord Gerrard of Gerrard Bromeley.

Sir Charles Stanhop [sonne and heir to the Lord Stanhop] after Lord Stanhop of Harington.

Sir Edward Bruce [sonne and heir to the Lord Kinloffe] after Lord Kinloffe.


Mawin Touchet [second] sonne to George Lord Awdley, Earl of Castle-Haven in Ireland.

Sir Peregrine Bartu, brother to the Earl of Lindsey.


Sir Edward Sheffield, [sonne and heir to the Lord Sheffield] after Earl of Mulgrave.

Sir William Cavendish, [brother to the Lord Ogle] after made Viscount Mansfield, and Earl of Newcastle.

These
These aboute fix of the Clock, being set in order by the Kings of Arms, proceeded fingly in their usual apparell (the younger foremost) about the Hall, and when they ascended the stairs, they pared together two and two, and so entred the Chapell, the Heralds standing upon the halfe-pace, while they did their obeyfance toward the Communion-Table: When they had stood a little before their Stalls, with the like obeyfance, they ascended into theirs in such manner, as the Knights of the Garter, and heard Evenfong, and returned to the Chamber appointed for their supper, with Eſcutcheons of their several Arms, and after to their Baths.

The next morning, being Sunday, they put on the Hermetical Garments, which were girt unto them, and with their Coifs of linen with their hoods plucked over, proceeded in like manner, but between their Esquires or Governors, the Musitians and the Heralds preceding; at the stair-head they paired, and so entred, the younger first, and placed themselves accordingly as the night before; when service was ended, the Earl of Worcester Earl Marshal for the time, the Earl of Suffolk lord Chamberlain, who came into the Chapel (at Service time) sitting upon a forme on the south side ministred the Oath unto them, Garter holding the Book, first to the Earl of Oxenford, and then by pairs brought up by two Heralds, the two Earls reading the Oath unto them alternis vicibus, which done the Court and a Voidy or sweet meats were brought into the Chapell to the Knights, who then retiring to their Bed-chamber, and Bathing-chamber, they devefted themselves of their Hermetical Weeds, put on white boots, a furcoat of Red Taffata, and a Robe of the same edged with white, and so ridd to the Court, firft the Trumpets, then the Heralds, then the Knights between their Governors, with their Pages riding before them, carrying a fword in a white scabbard with a Belt, with gilt hilts, and a pare of gilt spurrers hanging thereupon; being alighted at the Court gate, the Earl of Oxford preceded with his Page before him, between his two Governors, and the next followed according to their priority into the Hall, where being placed with their Governors in a femicircle forme, the King after came down, accompanied with the Nobility; (but no Bishops) and at firft the Earl of Oxford was presented unto him sitting under his State by the Governors, the
the Page delivering the sword to the Lord Chamberlaine,
and he to the King, who girt it about the Earls Neck,
and the Earl of Northampton put on his spurr.s, and so the
rest were received accordingly: But, when at the beginning,
some of the Nobility mistook the left spurr for the right,
the King, as though it were ominous, seemed offended, and
thereafter they put on only the right spurr, the King
haftning to the Sermon, and their Pages, when they came
down, did put on the other. Then they returned to Durham-house in such Order as they came, where they sat down
at Table, but in a modest temperance did eat nothing, but
rising from the Table, left the meat to their Governors
and Esquires. About six of the Clock in the afternoon, they
rid to the Court orderly againe, and so proceeded to the
Vespers, in the End whereof before the Creed, they offered
the swords into the Dean of the Chapells hands, redeeming
the same with an Angell offered into a Bason held by a
Minifter in a Cope thereby. The Dean used these Words
at the re-delivery of their swords; By the Oath, that you
received this day, remember to use your sword to the Glory of
God, the Defence of his Word, of your Sovereign and Country;
and to the maintenance of Justice; and so returned by the
upper end to their Stalls, where they sat, while the Ver-
cicles and Collects were red, and the Anthem sung.

And then descended from their Stalls, and so passed forth,
the King’s Master-Cook with his Chopping-knife admonishing
them of their Oath, and taking their horses, returned to
Durham-house, where they parted every one to his own.

N U M B. LXXVI.

G. 2. pennes me p. 333.
The manner of the Creation of the Knights of the Bath, and
the Ceremonies observed in solemnizing the same.

According to the Order given from the Commissioners ap-
pointed for the oversight and directory of these Ceremonies,
the Lords, and others that were to receive the honorable Or-
der of the Bath, repaired on Saturday the second of June,
to Durham-house in the Strand, and there in the afternoon
heard Evening prayer, observing no other Ceremony at that
time, but only passing through the Hall, the Heralds going
before them with their Coats upon their Arms unto the
Chapell,
Chapell, from whence, after Service ended, they returned unto the Chamber, they were to supp in.

Their supper was prepared at one Table, and all sat upon one side of the same, every man having an Escutcheon of his Arms placed over his head, and certain of the Kings Officers being appointed to attend them, in this manner having taken their Repast, the Table was removed, and several Bedds made ready for their lodging in the same place, after the same manner, all on one side, and each one, as afore, right under Escutcheon of his own Arms, their Beds were Palets with Canopies of red Say, but they used no Curtains; the Knights in the mean while were withdrawn into the Bathing-Chamber, which was the next Room to that they supped in, where for each of them was provided a several Bathing-Tub, which was lined both within and without with white Linnen, and covered with red Say, after the Bath they betook themselves to Rest. Early the next morning they were awakened with Musick, and at their uprising invested in their Hermit's habits, which was a gonne of gray Cloth girded close, and Hood of the same, with a linnen Coyfe under it, and an handkerchief hanging at his Girdle, cloth stockings soaled with leather, but no Shoes; and thus appalled, their Esquires going with the Heralds wearing their Coats of Arms, and sundry sorts of Wind Instruments going before them, they proceeded from their lodging down through the Hall, the meanest in order foremost, as the night before, till they came to the Chapell, where, after Service done, their Oath was miniffred unto them by the Earl of Worcester, and the Earl of Suffolk, in a solemn and ceremonious manner, all of them standing forth before their Stalls, and at their coming out making low Reverence towards the Altar, by which the Commissioners fate, then were they brought up by the Heralds by two at once, the chiefest first, and so the rest, till all successively had received their Oaths, which in Substance was, That above all things they should honour God and maintain true Religion, love their Sovereign, serve their Country, help Maidens, Widows, and Orphans, and to the uttermost of their Power cause Equity and Justice to be observed; This done, whilst they were yet in the Chapel, Wine and Sweet-meats were brought, then they departed to their Chamber to be disrobed.
robed of their Hermits Weeds, and now revêteled again in
Robes of Crimson Taffata lined with white Sarcenet, having
white Hats on their Heads with white Feathers, white
Boots on their Legs, and white Gloves tied to the Strings
of their Mantles, all which performed, they mounted on
horserack, their Saddles being of black Leather, and Bridles
of the same, with white Crosses upon their Breasts, and
Cruppers of their Horses, each Knight between his two
Esquires, well apparelled, with Footmen attending, and his
Page riding before him, carrying his Sword with the Hilt
upward, and his Spurrs hanging thereon. In this Order they
ranked every Man according to his Degree, the best or
chiefeft first, they rode fair and softly toward the Court-
Gate, they were conducted by the Heralds, and others ap-
pointed for that Purpofe, into the Hall, where His Majefty
fitting under his Cloth of Estate, gave them their Knight-
hood in this Manner. First, the principal Lord, that is to
receive the Order comes, led by his two Esquires, and his
Page before him bearing his Sword and Spurrs, and kneeled
down before his Majefty, the Lord Chamberlain takes the
Sword of the Page, and delivered it to the King, who puts
the Belt over the Neck of the Knight aslape his Breast,
placing the Sword under his left Arm, then two Noblemen
of the Chief about the King put on his Spurrs, and fo is
the Ceremony performed in this Sort, the Earl of Oxford,
which was the Principal of this Number, being first created,
the rest were all consequently knighted alike; and when
the Solemnty thereof was fully finished, then all returned
again in order as they came, having some small Difference,
in that the youngest or meanest Knight went foremost,
and their Pages behind them; Coming back to Durham-house,
their Dinner was ready prepared in the fame Room, and
after the fame Fashion as their Supper was the Night be-
fore, that being fat, they were not to taste of any thing
that ftood before them, but with a modest Carriage and
graceful Abstinence to refrain, divers kinds of sweet Mu-
lick being play'd the while, and after convenient Time of
fitting, to retire and withdraw themselves, leaving the Table
furnished to their Esquires and Pages: And about four of
the Clock in the Afternoon they rode again to Court to
their Service in the King's Chapel, keeping the fame Order
they
they did at their return from thence in the Morning, every Knight riding between his Esquires, and his Page following; At their Entrance into the Chapel, the Heralds conducting them, they make a solemn Reverence; the youngest Knight beginning, the rest orderly insuing, and so one after another take their Standing before their Stalls, where all being placed, the eldest Knight maketh a second Reverence, which is followed to the youngest, and then all ascend into their Stalls, and take their accustomed Places, Service then beginning, and is very solemnly celebrated, with singing of divers Anthems, and playing on the Organs, and when the time of their Offertory is come, the youngest Knights are summoned forth of their Stalls by the Heralds, doing Reverence, first within the Stalls, and again after they are descended, which is likewise imitated by all the rest; and being all thus come forth, and standing before their Stalls, as at first, the two eldest Knights with their Swords in their Hands are brought up by the Heralds to the Altar, where they offer their Swords, and the Dean receives them, of whom they presently redeem them with an Angel in Gold, and then come down to their former Places, whilst two others are led up in like manner, so doing successively, till the whole Ceremony be performed, which done, and Service ended, they depart in such Order as they came, with accustomed Reverence. At the Chapel Door, as they came forth, they were encountred by the King's Majesties Cook, who stood there with his white Apron and Sleeves, and a Chopping-Knife in his Hand, and challenged their Spurrs, which were likewise redeemed with a Noble in Money, threatening them nevertheless, that if they should not be true and loyal to the King his Lord and Master, it must be his Office to hew them from their Heels. On Monday Morning, they all met together again at the Court, where in a private Room appointed for them, they were clothed in long Robes of Purple Satin, with Hoods of the same all lined, and edged about with white Taffata; and thus apparelled they gave their Attendance - - - - at a Side-Board, as is already declared.
Numb. LXXVII.

At the Creation of the Prince of Wales. [3d June, 1610.]

The Lords and other Gentlemen appointed to receive the Order of the Bath, repaired to Durham-house, between two and three of the Clock in the Afternoon, to hear Evening-Prayer in the Chappel of the same House, to sup together, and after to prepare themselves unto Bathing.

The Bath is performed in the Night, where every Knight is to have his particular Tubb, and Attendants, a Bed with a Covering Teter, or Canopy of red Say, without Curtines, and a Scutcheon of his Arms over his Bed's head; after their Bath, they betake themselves to rest, and early in the Morning are awaked with Musick, and being risen, are invested by their Esquires Governors in their Hermits Habit, and so preceded by their Esquires, downe the Stairs round about the Hall, and so up again into the Chapel of the said House to hear Morning-Prayer, the Musicians and Heralds going before them, the Esquires and Musicians stayed in the Fore-Chapel.

Service being ended, the Lords Commissioners appointed for that Purpofe, did give them their Oaths, which done, and a Voydy prepared for them, they returned in the same manner as they came, to put off their Hermits Weeds, and were revested in Crimson Robes, white Hats, white Feathers, and white Boots, and so rid to the Court at Whitehall, to receive their Knighthood, in Manner as followeth.

First the Trumpets sounding, then the Heralds, every Knight's Page riding before his Master, bearing his Sword, the Pomel upwards, the Spurrs tyed to the Hilts, and on each Hand of the Knight, rideth an Esquire Governor well suited, and a Footman or two to attend their Horse.

At the Court-Gate they alight from their Horses, and are met with the Officers of Armes, and others appointed to conduct them to his Majesties Presence, to receive their Knighthood, as followeth.

The King's Majefty being sat in the Hall, accompanied with his greateft Lords, the chiefef Lord, that is to receive the Order of Knighthood, is first presented unto his Majefty by the Lord Chamberlain, who taketh the Sword from the Page, and delivereth it to the King, who putteth it about
about the neck of the Knight, as he kneeleth, and two of the Lords putt on his Spurrs in the King's Presence, and so are they knighted one after the other.

After which they returned, with the Trumpets, and Heralds before them to Durrham-house to dynner, every one having an Efchocheon of his Armes placed over his head, as he sittted, which is all on one side of the Table, but they must not eat, nor drink of that which is provyded for them.

Which Abstenance, or rather Pennance must be endured for decorum sake, with a modest and seemly carriage, The Musitians all the while playing before them. And after a convenient tyme of sitting, they arise, and goe into another Roome, leaving the Table furnishd to the Esquires and Pages.

About four of the Clock in the Afternoon, they rid in like manner with their Esquires to Evening Prayer in the King's Chapell, their Pages following them. At the Court Gate, the Officers of Armes gave their attendance, as well to conduct, as to direct them in every thing, At entring into the Chapell the Heralds made their accustomed Reverence, the younger Knights following, doing the like, taking their Place before the lower Stalls, and so all the rest, and when the eldert be placed, they do with like reverence ascend to the upper Stalls in like manner, as at St. George's Feast.

Being placed in their Stalls Evening Prayer began, divers Anthems being sung, and the tyme of offertory come, Mr. Garter fomoned them out of their Stalls, the youngest first, doing reverence first within the Stall, and the like after they are descended.

The eldert Knights are first brought up by the Heralds, bearing their Swords in their hands, the pomell upwards, and offered them to the Dean of the Chapell, and redeemed them presenty again, with a piece of gould of x s. and then depart as they came.

At the Chapell Door standeth the Master Cook, with a chopping Knife, and a wooden block, challenging their Spurrs, which they redeem with a Noble in money, threatning them, that if they be not loyal Knights to the King his Mafter, that he must hew their Spurrs from their Heelcs, and so they up on horseback at the Court Gate to Durrham-house again.

The next day they were apparlled in Robes of Purple Satin with hoods, all lyned with white Taffata, to attend en.
the Prince at his Creation, which was in the Parlement-house, then kept in the Court of Requefts. The King and the Prince came from Whitehall by water to the Parlament Stairs, But after the creation of the Prince, they returned all through Westminster-hall to the Bridge, and to Whitehall again, where they dined, the Prince, and Noblemen at a long table in the midst of the Hall, and the new Knights of the Bath at a long table on the West side of the Hall, where they fate all on one side.

NUMB. LXXVIII.
Stow's Annals p. 899.

Wednesday the 30th of May 1610, the Prince rode to Richmond, and the next day by water to Whitehall—and there he was received by the Officers of the King's Houfehold, in feve-
reral places according to their Offices—and the Saturday after [2 June] the Knights of the Bath, being in number 25, met at Durham-house between four and five of the Clock in the Af-
ternoone, and proceeded from the great Chamber round about the Hall, not in any robes or habits that night, but in their or-
dinary apparell, the Heraulds going before them with their Coats upon their Armes, and then entred the Chapell of the faid House, and there every Knight took his Seat, the chiefest
first, with solemn reverence placed, and then heard divine service, which being ended, they returned directly forth of the Chappell to the chamber, where they supped, fitting all
on one side, and attended by Gentlemen-Ushers, and the Kings Guard, every Knights Scutcheon being placed over his head, as he sat that night at Supper, and after supper they withdrew themselves into the next room, where all their Bathes
were prepared, every one having his severall Tubb lined within and without, with white linen cloth, and covered on the
top with red Say, and a ticket of every mans name set upon his Tub very orderly, and when they were bathed, there were beds set up in the roome, where they had supped for every
man, viz. a Pallet with a Canopy with an EScutcheon of his Armes, placed there as he sat at supper. the next Morning be-
ing Saterday, about seven of the clocke, they were all ready in their Heremitical weeds, viz. each Knight in his Gray Gowne, girded unto him with a ruffet filke girdle, and an
handkerchief hanging thereat, and a linnen coyfe upon his head, and upon that, his hood of gray suitable to his gown;
with a pair of Cloth Stockings, foaled with white leather, called Chafhambles, and being thus apparelled they went forward, the younger Knights marching first, and went round about the Hall of the said House in like manner, as they had done the night before, The King’s Musitians, with their wind Instruments, and the Heralds inveted in their Coats of Arms, going before them, and so came up again to the Chapell, and took their Seats, as they did the night before, with their accustomed Reverences, where divine Service being ended, they took their Oaths, the which was ministred unto them by the Lord Chamberlain and the Earl of Worcester, the eldest Knights first, and so unto the laft, the manner whereof was thus, First the twooldest Knights made their reverence within their Stalls, and being come forth, made the like reverence again, and stood before their Stalls, one against another; and so two by two orderly, untill they were all come forth, and stood before their Stalls, then Clarendon and Norroy went down, and made their reverence to the Altar, and brought up the two first Knights to the Altar, where the Commissioners aforesaid sate to give them their Oaths, which being done, they returned down as they came, and took their places before their Stalls, as they did before, then the two eldest Heralds conducted the two next Knights in like manner, and so by course and turns, untill they all received their Oaths, the forme of which Oath followeth,

Right dere Brother, great worship be this Order unto you, and the Almighty God give you the praying of all Knighthood. You shall honour God above all things, You shall be steadfast in the Faith of Christ, and the same maintain and defend to your power, You shall love your Soveraign above all earthly creatures, And for your Soveraign, and your Soveraigns Right and Dignity live and dy, You shall defend Widders, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, you shall suffer no extortion as far forth as you may, nor sit in any place, where any wrongfull Judgement shall be given to your knowledge, and as great honor be this noble Order unto you, as ever it was to any your Progenitors.

This Oath being given, and the Lords departed, the Knights standing still before their Stalls, were presented with a banquet of wine, and divers delicate sweet meats, and after the same, they reformed to the Chamber where they had been bathed the
the night before, and there putt off their Hermetical Habits, and invested themselves in their Crimson Taffata Robes, which was in this manner; first a Surcoat of Crimson Taffata, lined with white Sarcenet girt unto them, and over that a long robe of like Crimson Taffata edged with white, having Cardowes [Gordons] of white Silke, with Taffells of the same, at which Cardowes were tyed a pair of white leather gloves, their hatts, boots, and feathers were white also, and so they took their horses in Durrham-house Yard about tenn of the clock, being furnished with black leather Saddles, garnished with white croffes over their horses foreheads and peurells [Pectorals] and so rode unto the Court, every one betwixt his two Esquires, and his Page before him bearing his sword, the hilt upwards, with his guilt spurrs hanging thereon, the Heralds riding before them, and the Trumpeters sounding all the way to the Court Gate, where they all alighted, and went on foot in such fort as they came on horseback, viz. the chiefest Knights firft, where they attending the Kings coming. And his Majesty being come and placed under the cloth of Estate, he knighted them according to their Degrees, as followeth; the eldest Knight being led up by his two Esquires, and his Page before him, bearing his sword and spurrs, delivered them to the Lord Chamberlain, and the Lord Chamberlain presented them to the King, who put the belt about their necks, and the sword hanging bendwise, in which manner they were all one after another knighted, and one of their spurrs was put on their right heel by a great Lord, and the other Spurr by their Page, which being ended, they rode back again to Durrham-house in the same order as they came, but that the youngeft Knight rode foremost, and their Pages came behind them.

The Dinner was prepared in the roome, where they supped the night before, with every Knights Arms over his head as aforesaid, sitting all upon one side of the Table, yet did they neither eat nor drink of that which was there prepared for them, but having fate a convenient time in this gentle abstinence, they all arose, and withdrew themselves into another Roome, leaving their well furnished Table to the Pleasure of their Esquires and Pages. And after dinner, about four of the clock they rode again to the Court in like manner as they returned home in the morning, viz. the youngeft Knights firft, and
and his Page behind him, and so came to the Chapell, where with accustomed Reverences to God, and the King they entred, and ascended their Stalls, as they had formerly done in the morning at Durrham-house, and presently after the second lesson, the Musick of the Offertory being begun, the Knights with their usual Reverences came forth, and stood before their Stalls, where the Earl of Oxford (Garter going before him) first offered his sword at the Altar, the pommel upwards, and redeemed again for an Angel of Gold, and receiving a short Exhortation of the Dean, he returned before his Stall again, and then two other of the eldest Knights were brought up by two of the Kings of Arms, who in like manner offered their swords, and redeemed them, and returned, and so the rest, one after another, offered their sword, untill the youngest. The Words of the Deans Exhortations were these,

By the Oath, that you have taken this day, you shall use these swords to the Honour of God, and his Word, to the Defence of your King, and Country, and to the maintenance of Justice and Equity.

Evening Prayer being ended, there stood at the Chapell Door the King’s Master Cook with his white Apron, and Sleeves, and Chopping-knife in his hand gilded about the Edge, and challenged their spurs, which they redeemed with a Noble a piece; and he said to every Knight, as they passed by him,

Sir Knight, look, that you be true and loyal to the King my Master, or else I must hew these spurs from your Heels.

And so they marched through the Hall into the Court Yard, and at the Gate took their HorSES, and returned to Durrham-house in the same Order as they came, the Trumpets sounding, the Heralds still attending them, till they came there; and then every Knight alighted, and put off his robes, and then every one went privelty to his own lodging; for that night they had no Supper there provided.

The next morning, about eight of the Clock, they mett all in the Queens Closet, where they put on long purple satin robes lined with white Taffata without any Cardowes, and about their Necks, a hood like a Batchelor of Law, edged about with Taffata, being then ready to attend the Prince unto his Creation, but for want of good and true Direction, the Prince (who should have gone in a Barge by himself, and these Knights in another before him) went with the King, in
his Barge; And the Knights of the Bath stayed behind, untill they were sent for, and being landed at Westminster Palace-Bridge, they were met at the Hall-Gate by the Heralds only, and so conducted up to the Door of the Court of Wards, where the Prince was to proceed to his Creation, and they went in next before the Lords, that were employed in several services at the said Creation, and the Heralds before them, and proceeded into the Parliament-Chamber, where he was created in this manner following, the Lords performing their several Offices here underwritten. Master Garter bearing the Letters Patents &c. Then follows the Ceremony of Creation.

All which being ended, they returned down through Westminster-hall, to the Palace-bridge in this manner, first the Masters of the Chancery, and other Ministers of the Law viz. the King's Councill, and others, then the Officers of Arms, the Knights of the Bath, next after them the Judges, and after them the whole Parliament-house in order as the common proceeding is, the Barons, Vicounts, Earls, and Marquises having Coronets on their heads, Master Norroy and Master Clarenceux going next before the Lord Treasurer and the Lord Chancellor, and Master Garter next before the Sword, and so proceeded to the Stairs, where all took water, in several Barges, the Heralds and the Trumpets going in the Row-barge next before the Knights, and so landed at Whitehall Bridge, where the Officers of Arms, the Knights of the Bath, and Lords being first landed attended the King, And when the King and Prince were landed, they went all before him into the Hall, and so up into the great Chamber, from whence the Prince came down to Dinner into the Hall, where were two Tables set longways down the Hall, one of them stooed in the middle, where the Prince himself sat at the upper end, accompanied with the Lords, that attended him in his Creation, and at the other Table on the left hand of the Prince, sat all the Knights of the Bath in their purple Robes all upon one side, where they were all royally feast-ed and attended by the Kings Servants.

N U M B. LXXIX.

Knights of the Bath, made at the Coronation of Charles Prince of Wales, at Whitehall 3 Nov. 1616.

James, Lord Matravers, eldeft sonne to Thomas Earl of Arundell.

Algernon
Algernon Lord Percy, eldest son to the Earl of Northumberland.
James Lord Wriothesley, eldest son to Henry the Earl of Southampton.
Theophillus Lord Clinton, after Earl of Lincoln, eldest son of Thomas Earl of Lincoln. [Stow calls him Edward]
Edward Seymour, Lord Beauchampe, Grandchild to Edward Earl of Hertford.
George Lord Barkeley.
Henry Lord Mordant, after Earl of Peterborough.
Sir Henry Howard second son to the Earl of Arundel, after Lord Matravers.
Sir Robert Howard fifth [third] son to Thomas Earl of Suffolk.
Sir Edward Sackvill, after Earl of Dorset.
Sir William Howard sixth [fourth] son to Thomas Earl of Suffolk.
Sir Edward Howard seventh [fifth] son to Thomas Earl of Suffolk, after Lord Howard of Fisricke in Yorkshire.
Sir William Seymour second son to the Lord Beauchampe, after Earl of Hartford.
Sir Mountague Bartie sonne and heir to Robert [Lord Willoughby] Earl of Lindsey, after Lord Willoughby.
Sir William Stourton sonne [and heir] to the Lord Stourton.
Sir William Parker [son and heir of Lord Montegle] after Lord Morley and Monteagle. [Stow calls him Henry.]
Sir Dudley North [son and heir of the Lord North] after Lord North.
Sir Spencer Compton [son and heir of the Lord Compton] after Earl of Northampton.
Sir Rowland St. John, Brother to Oliver Earl of Bulfinbrooke.
Sir John Cavendish second son to William Earl of Devonshire.
Sir Thomas Nevill sonne to Henry Lord Abergavenny.
Sir John Roper [son and heir of the Lord Tenham] after Lord Tenham.
Sir John North Brother to Dudley Lord North.
Sir Henry Carey, after Viscount Faulkland.


G. 2. penes me p. 400 b.

Saturday the 2 November they went to Evening Prayer, from the Parliament-house to the Chapell of King Henry 7, and after returned to the said Parliament-house, where they kept their Bath. Sunday the 3d of November, they were awaked with Musick, and went in their Hermits weeds to the Chapell aforefaid, where, after that Morning Prayer was ended, they had their Oaths given them in the Chapell, by the Earl of Arundell then for that time Earl Marshal, and the Earle of Pembroke Lord Chamberlain, and then returned with their Musick, and Herals to the Parliament-house again, where they put off their Hermits weeds, and were revestled in Robes of Crimson Taffeta, white Hatts, Feathers, and Boots. In the Afternoon they ridd with their Esquires and the Herals to Whitehall, to receive the Knighthood, and then returned, riding to the Parliament-house again, and presentely to Whitehall again to Evening Prayer, they offered up their Swords, and so returned. Munday 4 Nov. they were in Robes of Purple Satin to attend on the Prince, who was created at Whitehall in the Great-Hall.

NUMB. LXXX.
Knightes of the Bath, made at the Coronation of King Charles 1, February 1625.

James Stanlye, Lord Strange, eldest sonne to William Earle of Derby.
Charles Cecill, Lord Cranborn, eldest sonne to William Earle of Salisbury.
Charles Herbert, Lord Herbert of Shurland, eldest son to Philip Earle of Montgomery.
James Hay, Lord Hay, eldest son to James Earle of Carlile.

BazeU
Bazell Fielding, eldest son to William Earle of Denbigh.
Oliver St. John, Lord St. John, eldest son to Oliver Earle of Bullingbrooke.
Mildmay Fane, Lord Burghersfi, eldest son of the Earle of Westmerland.
Lord Henry Pawlet, younger son to William Marquess of Winchester.
Sir Edward Montagu, eldest son to Henry Viscount Mandevill, after Earle of Manchester.
Sir John Cary, eldest son to Henry Viscount Rochford, after Earle of Dover.
Sir Charles Howard, eldest son to Thomas Viscount Andover, after Earle of Berkshire.
Sir William Howard, second son to Thomas Earle of Arundell.
Sir Pawlet St. John, second son to Oliver Earle of Bullingbrooke.
Sir Francis Fane, second son to Francis Earle of Westmerland.
Sir James Howard, eldest son to Theophilus Lord Walden, after Earle of Suffolk.
Sir William Cavendish, eldest son to William Lord Cavendish, Earle of Devonshire.
Sir Thomas Wentworth, eldest son to Thomas Lord Wentworth, after Earle of Cleveland.
Sir William Paget, son to William Lord Paget, of Bewdefert, after Lord Paget.
Sir William Russell, eldest son to Francis Lord Russell, after Earle of Bedford.
Sir Henry Stanhope, eldest son to Philip Lord Stanhope of Shelsford, after Earle of Chesterfield.
Sir Richard Vaughan, eldest son to John Lord Vaughan of Molengar in Ireland.
Sir Christopher Nevill, second son to Edward Lord Abergavenny.
Sir Roger Bartie, second son to Robert Lord Willoughby, after Earle of Lynsey.
Sir Thomas Wharton, second son to Thomas Lord Wharton.
Sir Saint John Blunt, brother to Mountjoy Blunt, Lord Mountjoy, after Earl of Newport.

[All these sat at one Table on the one side.]
Sir Ralph Clare of Worcestershire.
Sir John Maynard of Essex, second brother to the Lord Maynard.
Sir Francis Carew of Devonshire, qu. if not Cary.
Sir John Byron of Nottinghamshire.
Sir Roger Palmer of Sussex, Master of the King's Household.

Sir Henry Edmonds, son to Sir Thomas Edmonds, Treasurer of the Household.
Sir Ralphe Hopton of Somersetshire.
Sir William Brooke of Kent.
Sir Alexander Ratcliffe of Lancashire.
Sir Edward Scot of Kent.
Sir Christopher Hatton of Northamptonshire.
Sir Thomas Sackvill of Sussex.
Sir John Munson of Lincolnshire, son to Sir Thomas Munson.
Sir Peter Wentworth of Oxfordshire.
Sir John Butler of Hartsfordsire.
Sir Edward Hungerford of Wiltshire.
Sir Richard Lewson of Kent.
Sir Nathaniel Bacon of Calford in Suffolke.
Sir Robert Poyntz of Gloucestershire.
Sir Robert Bevill of Huntingtonsire.
Sir George Sands of Kent.
Sir Thomas Smith of Weston-Hanger in Kent.
Sir Thomas Fanshaw of Warparke in Hartshiresire.
Sir Miles Hobard of Plomfled in Norfolk.
Sir Henry Hart of Kent, son to Sir Percivall Hart.
Sir Francis Carew, alias Throgmorton, of Bedington in Surrey.
Sir Matthew Monins of Kent.
Sir John Stowell of Somersetshire.
Sir John Jennings of Hartshiresire.
Sir Stephen Harvey of Northamptonshire, son to Judge Harvey.

Pat. 1 Car. p. 5. n. 6. King Charles, on 30th January, Commissions the Earls of Arundell and Pembroke to exercise every thing for the full making of Knights of the Bath.
NUMB. LXXXI.

His Majefty hath commanded me to let his Will and Pleasure be knowne, that all the Knights of the Bath, aswell those made by the Kinge his Father of glorious memory in any time of his reigne, as those by himself at his Royal Coronation, shall contynually weare the Ensigne of that Order about their necks, as a marke of Honour. And that they may not want any due unto them, I am to publish that Knights of the Bath and their Wyves are of right (without question) to have precedency before all Knight Batchelors, and their Wives.

T. Arundell & Surrey,
Whitehall, 4 Febr. 1625.

NUMB. LXXXII.

G. 2. penes me, p. 383.

Tuesday 13 February, 1637.

The time his Majefty hath appointed for the Prince his Son to receive the Orders of the Bath, and of the Garter, with his Installation at Windsor.

On Monday the next day after Trinity-Sunday, being the 21 of May next, the Prince his Highnes, with other Knights of the Bath, that shall be appointed to attend him, are to beginne in the Evening the Ceremonyes belonging to the Knights of the Bath, at the King's ould Palace at Westminſter. His Highnesse with them resting that Night in the Parliament Rooms, and other Rooms adjoining, which are to be prepared accordingly.

The next Morning, being Tuesday, his Highnesse, with the rest, having heard Mattins, and received their Oaths in the King's Chappell Royall of Hen. VII. at Westminſter, after changing his Robes with the rest of the Knights, is to come on horsebacke to Whitehall, and there that Morning receive Knighthood, and immediately after to offer in the Chapell there, at which time His Majesty (it being Sermon Day) may see the Ceremony, and then to returne on horsebacke to dinner, and so disperfe there at Westminſter.

On Wednesday, being the day, to which his Majestie for this Yeare is pleased to adjourne the day of St. George's Feaft, all the Knights of the Bath early in the Morning are to come on horsebacke in their Purple Robes together, from some
some Place which shall be appointed, to attend his High-
ness all that day, who will be there in his purple Robes to
honour the King his Father's Feast, at the Evening of which
day, the Scrutiny for Election is to passe according to Custom.

On Thursday Morning his Majesty will invest the Prince
with the Ensigns of the Order, at which time the Knights of
the Bath are to attend his Highness to Chapell, where
some Provision to be made for their convenienty toward
the Altar.

On Friday Morning his Highness is to goe towards Wind-
fore, beginning his Journey from Somerset-House, and to be
accompanied with all the Knights of the Order of the
Garter, and all their several Retinues (of which all the
Knights of the Order are to take most particular Notice) as
also with all the Knights of the Bath attending with their
Robes in the Proceedings; and so at Windsor, where their
Majesties are pleased to declare, themselves will be present
to honour the Feast of his Highness's Installation on Satur-
day the next day following.

Arundell and Surrey.

N U M B. LXXXIII.

Registrum Nobilissimi Ordinis a Garterio Denominati.

Anno Dom. 1638. Caroli anno xiii.

Maij xxio— Juventutis Principem Carolum jam octennem;
fed virtutibus longius multo quam ætate provectum, Supre-
mus in augustum ordinem cooptat, electoq; id (rescripto fuo
ad Regem Armorum dato) nunciari jullit. Præstolantem vero
beneficium Supremi, ex aula Sangeorgiana bini Primores
Ordines, Comes sicilicet Pembrochias & Montgomeria, Comesq;
Arundelis & Surria, medium deducunt, antecedente nigra-
virga-gerulo. Accedentem (non sine debita veneratione ad
thronum Supremi) exultans plenis affectibus excipit augustus
Pater, statimq; Periscelide—lavam cingit Tlibiam, repetente
Cancellario priscam formulam—Principi ad hunc modum
recepto, gratulabantur sigillatim omnes Commilitones; moxq;
ad Cameram Præsentiæ regredi, dictos binos Primores rogant,
ut Principem reliquorum nomine Supremo praeventent, Equi-
tis Baccalaurei titulo, & ritibus (ut leges jubent) primo ini-
tiandum; Primus enim ille apud Britannos dignitatis omnis
militaris gradus est, Honorum omnium in Republicâ basis;

NUMB. LXXXIV.
The Narrative of the Coronation of King Charles II. by Sir Edward Walker, Garter. MS. in Off. Arm.

To this great and splendid Solemnity, succeeded that of making Knights of the Bath, an Order, wherewith the Kings of England usually some Days before their Coronations dignified the Sonnes of their Nobility, and other eminent Gentry of this Kingdom; To which end, by his Majesties Command, the Lord Chamberlain of his Majesties Household (in the Vacancy of an Earle Marshal) wrot Letters unto every one of them designed for that Dignity, requiring their Attendance upon Thursday the 18th of April, in the Palace at Westminster, there to be called, and begin that Ceremony, the Copy of which Letter is as followeth,

After my hearty commendations to your Lordship; whereas his Majestye hath appointed the 23d day of April next for his solemn Coronation at Westminster, and the day before to proceed publiquely through the City of London to his Palace at Whitehall: And according to the antient custome used by his royall Predecessours, his Majestye is graciously pleased to advance certain of his nobility, and principal gentry into the honourable Order of the Bath, to attend him in those great solemnityes, and (amongst others) hath vouchsafed to nominate
you to be one of that number. These are therefore to will and require you, in his Majefty's name, to make your appearance at his Majefty's Palace at Westminster upon thursday in the afternoon, being the 18th of Aprill next, furnished, and appointed, as in such cases appertaineth, there to begin the usuall ceremony, and the next day to receive the said Order of Knight-hood of the Bath from his Majefty's hands, hereof you are not to fail; and so I bid your Lordship heartily farewell.

Your Lordship's very affectionate friend.

Hereupon sixty eight (whereof some were sons of the nobility) with Baronetts and Esquires, appeared in the Court of Requests, and being called by an Herauld, answered to their names, as they were all Ranked that morning by the Duke of Ormond, then Lord Steward, (and after Lord High Steward of England for the Coronation) the Earle of Lindsey Lord Greate Chamberlaine of England, the Earle of Northumberland Lord High Constable, and the Earle of Suffolk Earle Marshall (who that morning received their commissions and staves of office from his Majefty) their authority being thereby to continue unto the night after the Coronation) and by the Earle of Manchester Lord Chamberlaine of his Majeftyes Household whose names are as followeth, viz.

Edward Lord Clinton, Grandchild to the Earle of Lincoln.
John Lord Brackley, eldest son to the Earle of Bridgewater.
Philip Herbert, second son to the Earle of Pembrooke.
William Egerton, second son to the Earle of Bridgewater.
Vere Vane, second son to the Earle of Westmorland.
Charles Berkeley, second son to the Lord Barkeley.
Henry Bellaffis, eldest son to the Lord Bellaffis.
Henry Hyde, eldest son to the Lord Hyde, Lord Chancellour.
Roland Bellaffis, Brother to Viscount Fauconbridge.
Henry Capell, son to the late Lord Capell.
John Vaughan, second son to the Lord Vaughan, Earle of Carbery.

Charles Stanlye, Grandchild to the Earle of Darby.
Francis Fane, Grandchildren to the late Earle of Westmorland.
Henry Fane, Sir William Portman, Baronett.
Sir Richard Temple, Bart.
Whence being called in order by the Officers of Arms, (with their coats upon their arms) between their two Esquires, and Pages behind them, they proceed in their ordinary Habits to King Henry the 7th's Chapell, where they heard Evening-song; at their return they reposed themselves in the Painted Chamber, and Lords House of Parliament, Prince's Lodging, and Lobby; where their lodgings were prepared, and Supper being made ready for them in the Court of Requests, they were set at convenient distance each from other, under the several Escutcheons of their Arms, their Esquires...
and Pages standing on the other side of the Table to attend them; after Supper the Treasurer, and Comptroller of his Majesty's Household (the supper, and next day dinner being provided at his Majesty's Charge) at the upper end of the roome wellcomed them from the King, and conducted them to their Lodgins, where they were lodged in Palletts covered with red sely, each having a demitiefer without courtins of the fame stuffe, and an Elcocheon of arms on every teffer; at the foot of every pallit (which were set at equal distance from each other, both in the Painted Chamber, and the Lords house) was a Bathing-Tubb covered without with twenty or four and twenty Ells of fine Linnen, with a crosse hoope over it, covered with red Say, and a carpett at the side of it. The Rooms being voyded, each Bathed himself more or lefs, as he thought fitt, and fo went to rest.

Early the next morning all forts of musick with drums and trumpetts bid them good morrow, being risen, they apparelled themselves in Cordeliers, or Hermitts habits, and so between their two Esquires, and their Pages after them, and the Officers of Arms in their coats before them, they proceeded to Henry the 7th's Chappell, where being dispofed in order (the seats being not sufficient to hold them) they ftood before the Stalls against their Arms placed therein: Then the Duke of Ormond Lord Steward, the Earl of Lindsey Lord Great Chamberlain, the Earle of Northumberland, Lord High Constable, the Earle of Suffolk Earle Marshall, and the Earle of Manchester Lord Chamberlaine, by virtue of his Majesty's commision, the copy whereof is as followeth, (Garter principall king of Arms in his coat of arms preceeding them) came into the Quier, and sat down on five chairs before the Altar.

Charles the Second by the Grace of God King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all, to whom these Presents shal come greeting: Whereas we minding, and intending very shortly by the Grace of God to proceed to the Solemnity of our Coronation, in such fort, and manner, as in the Coronation of our Progenitors, and Predecessors hath been accustomed, and as to our State and Dignity Royal apperetineth, have, for the more Adornment of the fald Solemnity, and for the Nobility of Blood, good Service, and
and other good Qualities of many of our Servants, and other good Subjects, resolved to call certain of them to the Order, and Dignity of Knights of the Bath; Know yee therefore, that we, for the especial Trust and Confidence, which we have repose in our Right Trusty, and right wellbeloved Cousins, and Counsellors James Duke of Ormond Lord Steward, Montagu Earle of Lindsey, Lord great Chamberlaine of England, Algernon Earle of Northumberland, Lord high Constable, James Earle of Suffolk, Earle Marshall, and Edward Earle of Manchester, Lord Chamberlaine of our household, have assignd, nominated and appointed, and by these presents doe assign, nominate, appoint, and authorize the said James Duke of Ormond, Montague Earle of Lindsey, Algernon Earle of Northumberland, James Earle of Suffolk, and Edward Earle of Manchester, for us, and in our name, and by our authority, to doe, and exercise every thing, and things on our behalf, to be done and exercised for the full making of the Knights of the Bath, whom we intend specially to call for that Purpose, and shall particularly nominate under our royall hand, and signature: And our further pleasure is, that every person so to be advanced and made Knight of the Bath, and established by the Rights and Ceremonyes thereof, performed by our said commissioners, shall have, hold, and enjoy the said order of Knighthood of the Bath, with the name, title, and dignity, and all prerogatives thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight or Knights of like degree, made in the time of any of our Progenitors, have, and of right ought to have and enjoyed. In witnes, &c. Teste &c. 17 Aprilis 13 R. Caroli secundi.

Then the Officers of arms brought them up, fix at a time, the seniors first, and having made three Reverences, Garter read the ensuing Oath, or admonition, and Norroy held the book, and gave it them to kis.

Right dear Brethren, Great worship be this noble Order unto every of you. You shall love and dread God above all things, You shall be stedfast in the Faith of Christ, You shall love the King your Sovereign Lord, and him, and his right defend to your power, You shall defend Widows, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, you shall suffer no extortion,
as far as you may, nor fit in a place, where any wrongfull Judgement shall be given to your knowledge, and of as great honor be this Order unto you, as ever it was to any of your kinne, progenitors, or others.

All which done the Lords Commissioners retired, Garter attending them, and service being ended, the designed Knights returned whence they came, and there devested themselves of their Hermits habits, and being apparelled in white Sattin suits, they put on their surcoats of Crimofin Taffata lined with white, and their Mantles of the same, having Cordons of white silk and knopps of red silk and Gold, whereunto white gloves were tyed, as also white Boots, and white hatts and feathers, in this habitt they dined; after dinner they took horse, and with drumms, trumpetts, and heraulds before them, each in his seniority between his two Esquires, and his page well mounted before him, carrying his Sword and belt, the pon-mell upwards, with his Spurrs hanging on the hilt, they proceeded into the new Palace-yard, and having ridden round about it, and through King-street, they passed by Whitehall surrounding the place, where Charing-crofs lately stood; then they returned, and alighted at Whitehall Gate, where they ought to have been received by the Treasurer, and Comptroller of the house, and were by Garter, and the two provincial Kings of Arms, thence making a tour about the court, they passed up the staires to the Banqueting-houfe, where his Majesty sat under the Cloth of Estate.

In coming up, they made three obeysfances, and six of them being brought up together, neare the State (to shorten the time) the page of the eldest Knight upon his Knee delivered the Sword, Belt, and the Spurrs to the Lord Chamberlaine, and he to the King, then the Knight kneeling between his two Esquires, was knighted with the Sword of State; then the King hung the Knights own Sword about his neck, and after that, the Riband with the order; then the Knight arose, and put his right foot upon the degrees of the State, and the Earle of Lincoln (by his Majestys appointment) touched the heele of the Knight, with a Spurr; for had every Knights Spurrs been putt on, it would have taken up many hours time, this done, the Knight withdrew, and the second person was called by Garter according to the lift, and knighted as the former,
former, and so the first six, then the two officers of Arms conducted six more, who in the like manner were knighted, and so all the rest.

Which done, the Knights being put in order, the youngest formost, between his Esquires, and his page behind him, they proceeded to the Chappell, and there entered two and two making reverences, but because the Chappell was not capacious enough, they all stood before the Stalls, and after solemn service, and anthems, the six eldest were brought up by the Heraulds, and offered their Swords, the Bishop of London Dean of the Chappell receiving them, and laying them on the altar, and then gave them this admonition.

By the Oath, which you have taken this day, I exhort and admonish you to use these Swords to the Glory of God, and defence of the Gospell, to the maintainance of your Sovereigns right, and honour, and to the upholding of Justice, and equity to your power, so help you God.

Which done, they redeemed their Swords with an Angell in gold, and returned before their Stalles, and stayed untill all of them had done the same; at the chappell dore the Kings Master Cooke with a white apron, and Chopping-knife in his hand, having a little table before him covered with a linnen Cloath, as they passed by, said thus unto them.

Gentlemen, you know, what a great Oath you have taken, which is to defend the Gospell, succor the widows, and fatherless, right the wronged &c. which if you performe, and keep, it will be to your great honour, but if you break it I must hack off your Spurrs from your Heeles, as unworthy of this dignity, which will be a great dishonour to you, which God forbid.

Then all of them staying in the Hall, an officer of Arms declared unto them, that they were upon Monday following to be upon Tower-hill, by eight in the Morning, thence to proceed in their order, through London to Whitehall in the same habitts they then were knighted in, and that their Esquires had a place appointed for them in the proceeding; that upon Tuesday the day of his Majesty's coronation, they were in their purple Robes to attend by eight of the clock in the morning, in the court of Requefts, and thence to proceed to the Abby-Church, where there was a place appointed for
for them to sit and see the solemnity of his Majesty’s coronation, and so every one of them returned to his lodging.

NUMB. LXXXV.

Ad celebritatis famam oris remotioribus divulgandam, in Alemanniam & Angliam longe lateque per Regnum curfors Regii diriguntur & nuncii, qui utriusque sexus ingenuitatem oraculo vivæ vocis & apicibus invitarent ad solemnitatem in villa Sancti Dionysii prope Parisium peragendam.

Prima die mensis Maii, qua fuit dies Sabbathi, sole jam suos delectabiles radios abseondente, Rex ad locum deditum solemnitati accedit. Quem modico temporis spatio interjecto, Regina Sicilia sequuta est. In curru de Parisii exivit cum Ducum, militum & Baronum multitudine copiosa, quam etiam duo ejusdem filii Ludovicus Rex Sicilia & Carolus adolescentes egregii, equefrates fine medio sequebantur, non tam simili apparatu, quo prius soliti erant equitare. Nam scutiferorum prificorum ceremonias gradatim ad tyrnonum ordinem ascendentium servantem, tunica lata talari ex grifeto bene fusco uterque indutus erat. Quicquid vero ornamenti eorum equi vel ipfimi deferebant, auro penitus carebat. Ex simili quoque panno quo ambo induti erant, quasdam portiunculas complicatas ac fellis equorum a tergo alligatus deferebant, ut armigerorum antiquorum peregre proficifcentium speciem denotarent. In hoc statu cum matrem ufque ad Sanctum Dionysium conduxissent, in secretioribus locis nudi in præparatis balneis se mundarunt. Quo peracto, circa noctem initium ad Regem redeunt fælutanum, a quo benigne suscepti sunt, & tunc ad Ecclesiam festinans, eo sequi se precepit modò qui sequitur. Indumentis predicatis exuti, mox vestimentis novæ militiae adornantur. Ex oloferico rubino vestimenta duplicia minutis variis foderata deferebant, unum de subitus rotundum ad talos ufque proternum, alterum ad modum Imperialis chlamydis a capulis ad terram dependentis. Quo habitu distincti, & absque caputiis ad Ecclesiam sunt adducti. Insignium virorum comitiva praebat & sequebatur. Domini Duces Burgundiae & Turonia ad lavam & ad dextoram Ludovicum Regem Sicilia deducebant, Dux etiam Borboniensis & Dominus Petrus de Navarra Carolum deducebant. Et hi omnes cum Rege ante martyrum corpora sacrofancta, peraecta...

Die Luna subsequente, circa diei horam nonam, sicut condicio fuerat, Rex vigiuit duobus elecis militibus spectata strenuitatis indici juxil hafliludiorum spectaculum ut cum quanto apparatu possent & scirent, illud redderent gloriosum.
Quod & peragere maturarunt. Nam mox in equis Christi, auro fulgentibus armis, & scutis viridibus insignitis, quos etiam sequabantur qui lanceas & galeas solemniter vectabant, ad Regem pervenerunt & ibidem insignem catervam Dominorum quam ipsorum ducitres existerent, dignum duxerunt aliquamdiu praefolari. Eo jussu Regis ad numerum militarum praelectarum, vestimentis similibus ex viridi valde fusco cum fertis aureis ac gemmatis, cultu Regio phaleratis insigniti, qui etiam sequebantur qui lanceas & galeas solemniter vectabant, ad Regem pervenerunt & ibidem insignem catervam Dominorum qua ipforum ductrices existerent, dignum duxerunt aliquamdiu praebolari. Eae juflu Regis ad numerum militum praelectarum, vestimentis similibus ex viridi valde fusco cum fertis aureis ac gemmatis, cultu Regio phaleratis insidientes ad ejus presentiam adducuntur. Et sicut instructarum fuerant, de sinu suo funicullos sericos extrahentes, dulciter praedidtis militibus porrexerunt, & eorum sinistris latibus adhaeruerunt, cum lituibus & instrumentis musicis eos usque ad campum agonistarum deducunt. Ardor inde Martius militum animos incitat ut repetitione iictuum lancearum usque ad Solis occasum, laudis & probitatis titulos mererentur. Turn Dominae, quarum ex arbitrio sententia bravii dependebat, nominarunt quos honorandos & praemiandos singulariter cenfuerunt. Quorum sententiam gratanter Rex audiens & ipsam munificentia solita cupiens adimplere, praebat viros egregios pro qualitate meritorum donis dotavit ingentibus. Et inde cena peracta, quod reliquum noctis fuit, tripudiando transactum est.

Militari tyrocinio peracto, sequens dies ad similia exercenda viginti duobus electis scutiferis assignatur & pari pompa ut prius a totidem Domicellis in campum ducti fuerunt, ubi alternatis iictibus mutuo usque ad noctem conflatierunt. Cenaque laute Regio more est peracta, cum Dominae nominassent quos super cæteros elegerant præmiandos.

Quia exercitium illud militare Rex per triduum statuerat exerceri, die sequenti, priori tamen ordine non servato, indifferenter milites cum scutiferis ludum laudabiliter peregerunt, & ut prius virtutis præmia receperunt, qui judicio Dominorum &c habuerunt fortius. Sic nox quarta finem dedit choreis.

Sequenti die, Regia refectione peracta, Rex pro cujuscumque merito milites & armigeros laudavit non fine fluxus munerationum, munificentia Regalis manum porrigens liberalem, Dominas & Domicellas armillis & muneriis aureis & argenteis oloferiscisque donavit insignioribus, omnibusque cum pacis oculo valedixit, & concessit licentiam redeundi.

Entrevens de Ch. iv. Emper. &c. par Godefroy p. 127 &c.
NU M B. LXXXVI.

Cum Domino. Anno 1260. die octava Aprilis in Consilio generali congregato more solito ad sonum campanæ, & tubarum Domini Domini constituerunt, quod secunda Dominica Mensis Mai factus esset Miles ad expensas publicas nobilis, & fortis vir Ildibrandus vocatus Giraltæca. Venta igitur die secundæ Sabati Mensis Mai valde mane præfatus nobilis, & strenuus vir Ildibrandus bene, & nobiliter indutus cum m nova mañada fuorum ingreditur Palatium, & iuravit fideltatem Dominis Dominis, & Sancto Protectori Civitatis Arretij in manus Notarii, & super sancta Dei Evangelia: poëtea honorifice ivit ad Matrem Ecclesiam, ut haberet benedictionem, & pro honore eius aduerunt sex domicelli de Palatio, & sex Tibicines de Palatio: In hora Prandij fuit ad prandendum, ex deliberatione Dominorum, in domum Domini Ridolfoni. Pro prandio fuit panis, & aqua, & sal, secundum legem militiæ, & commenfales fuerunt cum eo dictus Ridolfonus, & duo Eremitæ Camaldulenses, quorum senior post prandium fecit illi sermonem de officio, & obligationibus Militis. Post hoc Ildibrandus ingressus est cubiculum in quo stetit solus per horam unam, & poëtea ingressus est ad eum Senex Monachus Sanctæ Floraæ, cui devote, & humiliter confessus fuit peccata sua, & accepit ab ipso absolutionem, & fecit penitentiam impositarum. His peractis ingreditur cubiculum Barbitonfor, qui concinne caput, & barbam eius curavit, & poëtea ordinavit omnia, quæ necessaria erant ad Balneationem. Rebus sic stantibus ex deliberatione Dominorum venerunt ad domum Ridolfoni quatuor strenuorum Militum Andreaflus flius Marabuttini, Albertus Domigianus, Gilfredus Guidoternus, & Vgus de Sancto Polo cum mañada nobilium domicellorum, & cum turba Ioculariorum, Meneftreliorum, & Tibicinum. Andreaus, & Albertus spoliaverunt Ildibrandum, & collocaverunt eum in Balneum; Gilfredus autem Guidoternus, & Vgus de Sancto Polo dederunt illi optima documenta de munere, & officio novi Militis, & de magna dignitate. Post horam unam Balnei positus fuit in lecto mundo, in quo lineæa erant albælææ, & finilææ de mufìali, & papilio, & alia necessaria lectis de drappo férico albo erant. Permanenit Ildibrandum per horam unam in lecto, & cum iam nox appropinquaret fuit vestitus de Media lææ alba cum caputio, & fuit cinætus cinætura coriaee,
tea, Sumpsit reflexionem ex solo pane, & aqua; & postea cum Ridolfono, & quatuor supradictis ivit ad Matrem Ecclesiæ, & per totam noctem vigilavit in Capella, quæ est a manu dextra, & oravit Deum, & Sanctilimam Matrem Virginem, & Sanctum Donatum, ut facerent eum bonum militem, honoris plenum, & justum. Adstititerunt illi per totam noctem cum magna devotione duo Sacerdotes Ecclesiæ, & duo Clerici minores; item quatuor pulcra, & nobiles dominicæ, & quatuor nobiles domnæ seniores nobiliter induta, quæ per totam noctem oraverunt Deum, ut haec Militia esset in honorem Dei, & Sanctilimæ Matris ejus Virginis, & Sancti Donati, & totius Sanctæ universalis Ecclesiæ. Ridolfonus, & quatuor alii supradicti iverunt ad dormiendum; sed ante auroram redierunt. Orta jam aurora Sacerdos benedixit gladium, & totam armaturam a Galea usque ad folerettas ferreas; postea celebravit Missam, in qua Ildibrandus accepit a Sacerdote humiliter, & cum magna devotione Sanctilimum, & Sacratilimum Corpus, & Sanguinem Domini noftri Jefu Chrifti. Post hoc obtulit Altari unum magnum Cereum viride, & libram unam argentī honorum denariōrum Pifanorum; item obtulit pro redemptione animarum Sancti Purgatorii libram unam argentī honorum denariōrum Pifanorum. His peractis portaæ Ecclesiæ aperta fuerunt, & omnes redierunt in Domum Ridolfoni, in qua Domicelli de Palatio nobilem, & divitem reflexionem præparaverant; ponendo supra unam tabulam magnam, magnam quantitatem traganæ, diversa genera tartarorum, & alia similia cum optima Guarnaccia, & Tribbiano. Facta reflexione Ildibrandus ivit aliquantum ad dormiendum. Interim cum esset jam hora redeundì ad Ecclesiæ, novus futurus miles furrexit e lecito, & fuit indutus ex drappis omnibus albis fericeis cum cinclura rubra auro distintæ, & cum simili ftola. Interim Tibicines de Palatio, & Joculare, & Menefrelii tangebant sua instrumenta, & canebant varias ftampitas in laudem Militiæ, & novi futuri Militis. Postea omnes iverunt ad Matrem Ecclesiæ cum magna turba militum, & nobilium Domicellorum, & magna quantitate plebis vociferantis Vivat Vivat. In Ecclesiæ incepit Missa magna, & solemnis. Ad Evangelium tenuerunt enes nudos, & elevatos Ludovicus de Odomeris, Antonius a Mammi, Cerca-guerri illorum de Gioncolis, & Guillelmus Mijerangetchi. Post Evangelium Ildibrandus juravit alta voce quod ab illa hora in antea
antea foret fidelis, & Vassallus Dominorum Dominorum Com-
 munis Civitatis Arretii, & Sancto Donato. Item alta voce
 juravit quod juxta suum posse defenderet semper Domnas,
 Dominicellas, pupillos, orphans, & bona Ecclesiarum contra
 vim, & potentiam injustam potentium hominum, & contra
 illorum guaðanas juxta suum posse. Post hoc Ampho̅vis
 Bu̅dragus cinxit Ildibrandum calcare aurato in pede dextro,
 & D. Testa dicitus Lupus cinxit cum calcare aurato in pede
 finistro. Post hac pulchra nobilis Domincella Alionora filia
 Berengberii gladium illi cinxit. Postea Ridolfanus de
 more dedit illi Gautam, & dixit illi. Tu es Miles nobilis Militi-
 a equestris, & haec Gautata est in recordationem illius, qui te
 armavit militem, & haec Gautata debet esse ultima
 injuria, quam patienter acceperis.

Finita celebratione Sacrofancti Sacrificii Missae cum tubis,
 & timpanis redierunt omnes ad domum Ridolfoni. Ante por-
tam D. Ridolfoni stabant duodecim pulcræ, & nobiles Dom-
 nicellæ cum guirnaldis de floribus in capite tenentes in mani-
 bus cætenam ex floribus, & herbis contextam, & ha Domin-
cellæ facientes ferrarium nolebant, quod novus miles intra-
et in domum Ridolfoni. Novus autem Miles dono dedit
 illis divitem annulum cum rosa aurea, & dixit, quod jurave-
 rat se defenfurum esse Domnas, & Dominicellas, & tunc illæ
 permiserunt illi, ut intraret in Domum, in qua a Domicellis
 de Palatio magnum Prandium paratum fuerat, in quo multi
 milites, & seniores sederunt. In medio prandii Domini Do-
nini miserunt divitem domum novo Mâlii, siclicit duas in-
tegras, & fortes armaturas ferreas, unam album cum clavellis
 argenteis, alteram viridem cum clavellis, & ornamentis au-
 ratis, duos nobiles, & grandes equos alemannicos unum al-
bnum, alterum nigrum; duos Roncinos, & duas nobiles, &
 ornatas vestes armature superimponendas. Inter prandendum
 projecta fuit ex fenestris ad populum, qui erat in Strata,
magna quantitas tragea; multi panes mustacei, multæ gallinae,
 & pipiones, & magna auarum quantitas; unde magna, &
incredibilis latitia in toto illa contrata erat; populus exclama-
bat Vivat Vivat, & orabant, ut frequentius haec festivitas
 fieret, cum jam essent plures quam viginti anni quod facla
 non fuisset. Post prandium novus Miles Ildibrandus Armatura
 illa tota alba, quæ benedicta fuerat in Missa ad auroram ar-
matus fuit, & cum eo armati fuerunt multi nobiles homines.

Postea
Poltea Ildibrandus adscendit in equum album, & ivit ad Plateam possitus in medio a Luchino Taflonis supranomine dicto Pezcola, & a Farolfo Catenaio vocato Squarcina cum ornatis scutiferis lanceas, & scutos deportantibus. In Platea preparatum erat magnum Torneamentum, multæque Domna, & Dominicella in fœnebris erant; & multa turba populi in Platea. Sex Judices Torneamenti fuerunt Brunus Bonajuta, Naimerius de Totis, Úbertus de Palmiano dictus Pollezza, Guidoguerra Montebuonus, Bertoldus olim Cenci vocatus Barbacquadra, & Nanes de Fatálbis vocatus Mangiabolzonus. Hætililium prius factum fuit de corporis ad corpus cum lanceis absque ferro acuto, sed cum trappellis obtusis, in quo novus Miles bene, & fortiter se gestit, & cecurrìt primo de corpore ad corpus contra Jacobum a domo Bovacci, secundo contra Inghilfredum Gualconis supranomine vocatum Scannaguelfós, tertio contra Godentium Tagliaboves. Postea fuit factum torneamentum cum evaginatis enfibus, & res fuit pulcra, & terribilis, & tanquam vera guerra esset, & per gratiam Dei nihil mali, vel damni accident, nisi quod in Brachio sinistro leviter vulneratus fuit Philippus illorum a Fo-cognano. Magnam autem virilitatem monstravit Pierus Paganello, cui cum ex istu ensis projecta esset galea de capite, & remanisset cum capite nudo, & absque birreto ex maculis, noluit tamen ex torneamento exire, ut honeste poterat; sed intentus ad bene agendum, & ad gloriam acquirendum facto cooperiebat caput suum, & in majori folta pugnantium se fæ immiscebat. Appropinquate jam vespere cum magnis flrepitu tubarum indìctus fuit finis torneamentis; & Judices primum premium dederunt novo Militi. Secundum Piero Paganello, tertium Vico de Pantaneto, qui currens de corpore ad corpus cum Toniaccio illorum de Boftolis, lancea illum de equo procererat, licet multi dicerent, quod hoc non fuit ex defectu Toniacci, sed equi ipsius, tamen Toniaccius de Boftolis non potuit se se eximere quin deportaretur in Barella derisoria facta de fuitis. Novus autem Miles suum premium dono mifit per duos ornatos scutiferos nobili, & pulchra Dominicella Alionora, qua in Ecclesia cinxerat ipfi en- fem Militiæ, & premium fuit unum Bravium de drappo fe- riceo vermiculato. Post hoc cum jam esset nox alta novus Miles Ildibrandus cum quantitate luminarum, & cum tubis, & buccinis rediit in domum Ridolfoni, ubi cenavit cum amicis,
amicis, & consanguineis, & post coenam distribuit honorifica munera Ridolfono, & omnibus illis, qui aliquam operam prae-
mitterunt. Habuerunt etiam sua munera Domna, & Domni-
celle, quae in nocte vigiliae Idibrando adstiterant, ec.

Hec scripsi ego Pierus filius Mattei a Pionta, clerus anno
atatis meæ 50. qui vidi aliam similem solemnitatem quando
anno millefimo ducentesimo, & quadragésimo Domno Papa
Gregorio sedente, & Dommo Friderigo Imperatore Serenilimo
imperante factus Miles Corradus Mofnaderius, in Ecclesia
Sancti Pieri, sed illa solemnitas non fuit tam magnifica,
quam fuit ifta Domini Idibrandi, quæ vere fuit magnificen-
tissima, ec. Della seguente Scrittura, che racconta, come in Fi-
renze furon fatti Cavalieri Giovanni, e Gualtieri Panciatichi ne
fono fato favorito dal Sig. Conte Lorenzo Magalotti, che ne
conserua copia in un Libro diverse Scritture antiche raccolte da
uno de' suoi nobilissimi Antenati.

1388. Die 27 Aprilis 1388. præsentibus Ser Dominico Ser
Salvi, Fratte Georgio.

Domini fecerunt Sindicum ad militiam Domini Joannis de
Panciatichis, & Gualtieri filii Bandini, postea nominati Domini
Bandini, & ad omnia, & omnes actus, & ceremonias Domi-
num Gabrielem Aiimo de Venetiis Capitaneum Populi.

Die 25 Aprilis 1388. Indictione 11. præsentibus Aghinolfo
D. Gualterotti, Nicolaio Nicolai, Laurentio D. Palmerii, & Fran-
cisco Nerii Fioravantis in Ecclesia Sancti Ioannis.

1. Caput, & barbam fìbi facit fieri pulcrius quam prius esset,
& caput, & voluit pro completo haberì factus per Dominum.
C. hoc modo quod manu tetigit barbam.

2. Intret balneum in signum lotionis peccati, & cujuslibet
vitii, ec. puritatis prout est puer, qui exit de Baptisme.
Commisit quod fieret per Dominum Philippum de Magalottis.
D. Michaelam de Medicis, & D Thomasium de Sacchetii, & pro
cis balnearetur, & sic balneatus fuit.

3. Statim post Balneum intret lectum purum, & novum
in signum magnæ quietis, quam quis debet acquirere virtute
Militia, & per Militiam. Missus in lectum per prædictos
Commisit, ec.

4. Aliquantulum in lector strato exeat, & vestiáture de drappo
albo, & sericeo in signum nitiditatis, quam debet custodire
Miles libere, & pure. De mandato Capitanei indutus albo,
& sic illo fero remanfit inter tertiam, & quartam horam noctis.

5. In-
5. Induatur roba vermilia pro sanguine, quem Miles debet fundere pro servitio Domini nostri Iesu Christi, & pro Sancta Ecclesia. Die 26. dixit Mensis de cante in dicta Ecclesia præsensibus supradictis de mandato, & commissione Capitanei exitus est, & indutus vermilio per dictos Milites.

6. Calceatur caligis bunis in signum terræ, quia omnes sumus de terra, & in terram redibimus. Factum est de caligis nigre de fisco successe per dictos tres Milites.

7. Surgat incontinenti, & cingatur una cinctora alba in signum Virginitatis, & puritatis, quam Miles multum debet inspicere, & multum procurare ne fedet corpus suum. Factum est, & cinxit eum Capitaneus.


10. Alba infula in capite in signum, prout debet facere opera pura, & bona, ita debet reddere animam puram, & bonam Domino nostro. Omiffum fuit, quia non erat infula.

11. Alapha pro memoria ejus, qui Militem fecit. Non debet Miles aliquid villanum, vel turpe facere timore mortis, vel carceris. Quatuor generalia faciat Miles.

Primo non sit in loco, in quo falsum judicium detur. Secundo non de prodigione tradere, & inde discedere, nisi alias posset resipere. Tertio non ubi Dama, vel Damigella exconfilietur, sed consulere recte. Quarto jejunare die Veneris in memoriam Domini nostri, ec. nisi valetudine, vel mandato Superioris, ec. vel alia juxta causa.


D. Ioannes
Joannes promisit, & juravit pro se, & pro D. Bandino, & promisit quando effet legitimae setatis infra annum coram D. D. ratificaret, & juraret.

Fram Redi Bacco in Toscana. p. 163. &c.

NUMB. LXXXVII.

A tres noble, & excellent Prince Johan de France, Duc de Normandie, & ainsie filz de Philipppe par la grace de dieu Roy de France, Frere Johan de Vignay vostre Petit religieux entre les autres de vostre Seignorie paix, sante, joie, & victorie sur vos ennemis— Je mis un petit livret de Latin en Francois— selon le gieu des eschez. &c.

De l'estat & de la fourme des Chevaliers, & de l'ordre de Chevalerie.

Le Chevalier doit estre sur son cheval arme de toutes armes, le haubert veste, le heaume en la teste, arme de jambes, & de piez, la lance en la main destre, couvert a fa fenestre de son escu, ses plates vesteuses, ficome il appartient. Et doit avoir cheval convenable, & enseigne pour Bataille. Et leur doit souvenir, que quant ils furent faiz Chevaliers, ils furent premiers baignez, le chief laue & roingne, & la barbe tondue ou rese. Et par ce est il signifie, que tout aussy comme ilz ont les membres nettoiez par dehors, aussy doivent ilz estre nez pardedens, & purs en conscience & en penfee. Et se doivent garder nettement & baigner en toute cointoifie & honeste. Et apres ce baing furent couchiez en un lit net & noble, que signifie que ilz doivent conquerre par leur chevalerie leur lit en paradis. Quant ilz se leverent du lit, ilz furent premiers vesteuz de robe linge blanche, & nette, par laquelle il leur est donne a entendre, qu'il doivent toujours tenir leur corps pur & net en chastte & sans vice d'ordure. Et puis furent vesteuz par deflus d'une robe vermeille, laquelle signifie, que tout bon chevalier doit souffrir paine, & espandre son sanc pour le droit de leglise, & de sa terre, & pour le droit naturel son seigneur deffendre. Et puis ilz furent chaussiez de chausses noires en signe de humilite, si que il li souviengne dont il vint, qui il est, & ou il yra, & doit penfer que il est mortel; Et apres ce il furent chaussiez deux esperons doréz pour son cheval insticier & contraindre, parquoy il est signifie, que tout aussy comme
il contraint fon cheval de estre preft & vite a son talent, doit il avoir sa pensée esmeue a dieu servir, amer, & hono-
rer. Et dont apres lui est l'espee cainte, dont la renge doit estre blanche & nette, & appelée fengle de Chevalerie, &
par l'espee, qui trenche de ii pars font signifies ii choses, qui font en tous bons Chevaliers, cest de garder & deffendre
le droit temporel & l'espirituel, Et ces deux trenchans font appliquez aux glaives, des quelz Jhesu Crist dit en l'evan-
gile, quant il commanda a ses disciples & dist. Qui na glaive
vende sa cote & lachate, & Saint Pierre li dist, Sire vecy
deu glaives, & il respondu il souffit, Mais les disciples fi
ne savirent pas pourquoi il disoit ce, qui signifioit par lui
le povoir qu'il donna a Saint Pierre de pardonner & corri-
ger pechiez. Et par lauter il signifiat le glaive de puniflion,
qui appartient aux Princes temporelz, Car il neft nul Prince,
à qui il n'appartiengne estre Chevalier. Et par la renge
blanche il est signifie, que il doit nettement tenir ses Rains,
qui en font cains de toute ordure de luxe. Mais tout avant
que il prengne esperons ne espee, il doit veiller toute nuit en
l'église en prieres & en oriofons, en requerant a dieu, que il
lui vueille donner grace & vertu & povoir de maintenir
bien & honnêtement l'estat de Chevalerie. Et quant toutes
ces choses font ordonnez & faictes ilz doivent aler devant
le Roy, ou le Prince, qui les fait Chevaliers, & estre agenoulz
devant lui en signe de humilite & ausi comme par maniere
de droite feaulte, Car ilz ne doivent jamais faire ne penfer
contre lui chose qui ne soit honnête, & raisonnable. Et le
Seigneur leur doit donner une Colee en signe de proest &
de hardement, Et que il leur fougienne de celui noble hom-
me qui la fait Chevalier. Et donc les doit le Seigneur ba-
fier en la bouche en signe de paix & d'amour. Et quicon-
ques recoit en soy l'orde de Chevalerie, il doit avoir fran-
chise, loyalte, amour & mifericorde, & doit amer les droits
garder, & deffendre, souffterir & aider aux vefues, & aux
orphelins, ficome cil qui par l'orde de Chevalrie est ennobil
d'armes corporells, & doit resplendir par vertu de bons meurs,
Car tant comme la dignite & la nobléfe de Chevalerie fur-
monte les autres persons par reverence & par honneur, de
tant doit il plus apparoir fur les autres par vertu & par
courtoifie.
The matter of maykynge Knyghtes aftyr the Cuftome of Engelonde
in tyme of peas and at the Coronacion [of the Kyng] that is
Knyghtes of the Bathe.

Whanne a Esquyer comyth into the Courte, for to receyve
the Orde of Knyghthode, in tyme of peas, aftyr the cuftome
of Engelone; he schall be worshipfully receyved of the Officeres
of the Courte, as of the Styward, or Chaumberleyn, yf they
be present, and elles of the Marchalles, and Uffheres, in the
abfence of the Styward, and Chamberleyn. And than there
shal be ordeyned twoo worshipful Squyers wyfe, and wele nor-
rysted in curtesy, and expert in the deedes of Knyghthodd:
And they schall be governours to hym, to serve, and ordeyn,
what schall longe to hym for the tyme. And in cafe, that the
Squyer come before dyner, he schall serve the Kyng of water,
or of a dysh only of the fyrite courfe, And that is doo for to
take leave of servyce of Squyers: Thanne his Governours schall
lede hym into his Chambre, withoute ony more to be feyne
[on] that day: And at even, the Governours schall fende aftyr
the Barbour, and he schall make reday a Bathe, in the best wyfe
that he can: The fatte withinne, and withoute wrapped with
lynnen cloth clene, and whyte, and covered with thycke Car-
pettes, or Mantelles, for colde of the nyght: Thanne schall the
Squyers berde be shaven, and his hede rounded, which done,
the Governours schall goo unto the Kyng, and to hym say thus;
Mooffe myghty Prince,oure foverayn Lord, loo, hit wexeth
ner unto the evyn, and oure Maifter is reday unto the Bathe,
whanne it pleafeth unto your roball magefte; And upon that,
the Kyng schall commaunde his Chamberleyne, to goo unto the
Squyers Chambre, that is to be made Knyght, And to take with
hym the mooffe worthy, and mooffe wyfe Knyghtes, that been
there present, to thentent, that they schall the fame Squyer truly
counfeyle, conforme, and techewyfely of the Orde [of makyng]
of Knyghthod. And foo with that, other yonge Squyers of
Houfholde, with Myniftrelles, fyngeinge, and dauifynge schall
goo before the Chamberleyne, and the feythe Knyghtes, unto the
tyme that they come unto the Chambre dore of the feyd Squyer,
that is to be made Knyght; Whanne the Governours hering
noyfe of Myniflelles, Anoon they schall make naked theyr
N ,  Maifier,
Maiter, and all naked shalbe put into the Bathe, The Menstralles before the entre of the Chamberleyyn, and other noble Knyghtes, shall abyde, and be stylle withoute noysfe togedyr with the sayd Squyers, levyenge their noysfe for the tyme; Which thynge doon, the Chamberleyyn with the sayde noble Knyghtes shal enter prevely, withoute noysfe, into the Chambre of the sayd Squyere, And when they entre, everich to other shal do reverence, and worshipp, which of them shalbe the fyrfte for to counfell the Squyer in the Bathe, of the Ordre, and the makynge to performe the Kyngs commaundement: And when they be accorded, than shal the fyrfte go the Bathe, and there he shal knele before the Bathe [ffat] feyenge secretly to the Squyer thus, Right dere brother, grete whorhippe be this Ordre unto yow, And Almighty God yeve yow the praysonge of all Knyghthood; Loo this is the Ordre; Be ye stronge in the feith of holy Chirche, [stedfaste and abydyng in worde manly Protector unto Holy Chirch] and Wydowes, and Maydones oppresse relewe, as right commaundith, yeve ye to evryrhy his owne, with all thy mynde, above all thynge love and drede God; And above all other erthly thynges love the Kyng thy Sovrayn Lord, hym, and his right defende unto thy power, And before all worldly thyngis put hym in worshipp, and thyngs that be not to be taken beware to begynne; In this wyse or better &c.

And whanne the Knyght [Esquier] is thus counfelled, the same Knyght Counfeyleour shal take in his hande water of the Bathe, and shal putte it upon the Shoulders of the Squyer, and take his leve to goon, and [to] departe; And the Governours at all tymes shal kepe the fydes of the Bathe; In this wyse shal all the other Knyghtes aforesayd doon, evryrhy ashyr other, in the best wyse, that they can; And this doon, the Knyghtes without noysfe shal go out of the Chambre for the tyme; Than shal theyr Governours take their Maiter oute of the Bathe, and ley hym softly in his bed, to drye; And the bed shal not be of grete valewe, but withoute colour [Silour] or corteyns: And whan the Squyer is wele dryed, he shal ryse out of his bed, and shal clothe hym warne for the waethe of nyghte, and upon all his clothes he shal have a cape of black russet, with longe sleves, and the hoode fewed unto the cape, in manere of an hermyte: The Squyer thus arrayde, and made redy, the Barbour shal put away the Bathe, and all thyng, that is aboute the Bathe, as wele withinne,
inne, as withouete: The Barbor fhall take all for his fee; And alfo he fhall have for his fhavynge, lyke as it folowith heereafter, That is to wete, yf he be a Duke, an Erle, an Baron, or a Bachelere after the cuftome of the Courte, eyvyrych fhall yeve afyr his aftate; And pryncipally yf Judgement be requyred, it fhalbe than at the wyll of the Kynges magefte; Afyr this, the Governours fhall open the dore of the Chambre, And the Knyghtes fhall wyfely enter inne agen with Mynstralles pleyinge in their instrumentis, and S quyers before them, fyngyng, and daunfynge, fhall lede the Squyer into the Chapell, And when they be in the Chapell, there fhalbe oderneyd fpyces, and wyne for the Knyghtes, and Squyers; whiche thynge doone, the Governours fhall lede these Knightes afore the Squyer, for to take theyr leve, And he with Sylence fhall thanke them of theyr labours, and worhippes, that they have doon unto hym; In that wyfe they fhall goo ouste of the Chapell, The Governours fhall shutt the dore, tyll the dawnynge wax clere, and the Day come, And there fhall abyde in the Chapell noon, but the [Squyer] the Squyers Governours, * Officers of Armes and the Wayte. In this wyfe, fhall the Squyer all nyght [in the chapell] tyll it be day, abyde eyvr in his Prayers, prayinge, and befechyng almyghty God, and the bleffed vyrgyne Marie his Modir, that thylke paffing temporall dignyte, he may receyve to his worhippe, and prayyng [ple-fyne] of God, the blyffed vyrgyne Marie his Modir [of ] holy Cherche, and the Orde of Knyghthood: And when the dawnynge comith, he fhall have a Preffe, and be confessed, yef it will lyke hym of his Synnes, and Tresfasses, which thynge ended, he fhall have his Matens, and Maffe, and be comonyd, if he wyll: Afyr his entre into the Chapell, he fhall eyvymore have a serge, or a taper of Wex brennyng before hym, And when Maffe is begonne, oon of the Governours fhall holde the taper brennyng before hym, unto the tyme that the Gofpell be begonne, And than he fhall betake it unto his Maiter, which fhall holde it in his hande, tyll the Gofpell be endyd, alwey his hede beyng covryd; And at the ende of the Gofpell the Governour fhall receyve the tapur agayne, and put it before his Maiter unto the ende of the Maffe: At the Levacioun of the Sacrament, oon of the Governours fhall putte of the hoode

* Officers of Armes omitted in my MS.
of his Myafter, And afyr the sight of the Sacrament, he shall
doo it on ayen, tyll In principio be begonne; Oon of his Gover-
nours shall putte of his hoope, and make hym stande, and
holde the sayd taper in his hande, havyng the feide taper
ffyckynge a peny nygh the lyght: And whan the preft feith
Verbum caro falbum e/d, he shall knele down, and offre the tapre,
and the peny. It is to wete, the taper to the worhippe of God,
And the peny to the worship of hym, that shall make hym
Knyght; These thynges doen, the Governours shall lede hym
ayen into his Chambre, and ley him ayen in his bed, tyll it be
forth dayes; And there he shall take the refte, that the waethe
of the nyght made wery; so than the bedde shal be amended,
and refrehed before the tyme, that his Maifter wake, that is
to wete, with covertoure of cloth of Gold, called Siglyton. And
that shall be lyned with blewe carde. And whan they [Govern-
nors] fe thyrmie, they shall goo to the Kyng, and feye to him
thus, Moffe victorious Prynce, whan that it lykith unto
yrore high Mageffe,oure Maifter shall awake; And ther-
upon shall the Kyng comeaunde the Knyghtes * of Armez,
Squyers, and Mynftralles aforefayd, that they goo unto
the Chambre of the Squyer, to awake hym, array him, and clothe
hym, and bryngne hym into the Hall before the Kyng hymself:
But before the comynge of the Knyghtes into the Squyers
Chambre, the Governours shall ordeyne all maner necessaries
redy by ordre, for to be delyvred unto the Knyghtes, And
whanne these Knyghtes be come unto the Chambre of the
Squyere, they shall enter softly withoute noyse, and fey to the
Squyere Sir, good day, It is tyme to aryfe: And with that, the
Governours shall take, and arayfe him up by the Armes;
Thanne the mofte worthy, and moffe wyfe shal take unto hym
his Sherte, Another next worthy his Breche, the thyrde his
dublet, the fourth shall cloth him with a surcot [gown] of rede
Tartayn, [other twayn shall lyfte hym up of his bed] Other
twuyen shall doon oon his hosyn, which shal be of blac sylke,
or of blak cloth with soles of ledyr fowed to them, Other tweyn
shall boton his sleves. Another shall gyrde him with a gyrddyll
of whyte ledyr withoute harneyfe of ouny metall of the breede
of un ynche; Another shall kembe his hede [another shall put
the Coyfe apon his hede] Another shall geve hym his mantell

* Of Armes omitted in my MS.
of the fute of the curtyll of rede tarteryn fastened with a lace of white fylke, with a payre of white gloves hangyng at the ende of the lace; But he shal have of the Chaundeler of the houfhole the Corce [Coife] gyrdyll and the Gloves: And on the other fyde the Chaundelor shal take for his fee all the Garments, and all the array, with all the necessaries, in which the Squyere was arrayde, and clothed the day that he entred into the Courte, for to take the ordre, togedyr with the bed in the which he lay fyrst after the Bathe, also wele the cloth of Gold called Siglaton, as other necessaries touchyng the fayd bed [and over that the fyrfte robe in which he was clothed after the Ordur taken]. And this thyngs fully doon, these wyfe Knyghtes shal lede this Squyere on horfebak unto the Kyngs halle; all tymes the * Officers of Armes, and the Mynistralles beyng before making theyr Menftralffe, Theyr [the] horfe shal be arayde in this wyfe, he shal have a laddell covred with blak lether; the arsons of whyte tre, foure square and blak ftyroppes with gyllt Irons, And his laddell shal have no Cropere, but a paytrell of blac lether with a croffe plate [patee] before hangyng [beforn] uppon the breste of the horfe, his brydyll shal be blac lether pleyne with longe reynes in the gyse of Spayne, and a croffe plate [patee] in the forchade, And there shalbe ordeyned a yonge gentyll Squyere, for to ryde before this [the] Squyere that is to be made Knyght, And he shalbe opyn hed, And shal bere the swerd of the Squyere; the poynte downward, with spores hangyng upon the Swerd, And the Swerd shal have a whyte scabard, And fret with the gyrdell and scales [frette] with whyte lether withoute ony harneyfe, And the yonge gentyll Squyere shal holde the swerde by the poynte [and] in this wyfe: They [He] shull ryde to the Kyngs halle, all tymes the eyd Governours beyng redy to the Maifter, as it is fyttyng to be, And the forseyd noble and wyfe Knyghtes shal foberly lede this Squyere, as they owen, And whan the Squyere comyth before the hall dore; the Mar-challes and Uihers [beforn hym] shal be redy afore him in the moft honeste wyfe, that they can, seyinge thus, Commeth down, And then he shall come down, The Marchall of England for his fee shal take the horfe, or 100s. This thyng thus doon, these wyfe Knyghtes shal lede the Squyere into the halle, or into the

* Officers of Armes omitted in my Ms.
grete Chambre unto his table; And forthwith he shal be putte,
at the begynnynge of the seconde table, tyll that the Kynge
come, The seyd Knyghtes [standing] aboute his Person, as on
every fyde, And the yonge Squyer swerd-berer before hym,
standyng with the swerd betwix the 2 Governours [aforeseid]
Whanne the Kynge comyth into the Hall, and perceyveth the
Squyer redy to take the Ordre in dew wyse, he askyth for
the swerd, and the spores, The Kyngs Chambyrleyn shal	
take the swerd, and the spores oute of the handes of the yonge
Squyere, And shal take and shewe them to the Kyng, The
Kyng shall receyve the right spore, and betake it to oon
of the mofte worthy that standith aboute, commaundynge
him that he put it on the right hele of the Squyer, And by
the Kyngs commaundement, that lord knelynge on the oon kne,
shal take the Squyer by the right leg, and putte the [hys]foote
upon his kne, and [foe] shal putte the spore uppon his hele,
and [he] shal make a croffe upon the kne of the Squyer, and
shal kyffe it, Thanne shal another lord put on the other hele
an other spore in the same wyse, that the other dyd, Thanne
the Kyng of the mekenesse of his hygh myght, takyng the
Swerd in his handes, shal gyrde therwith the Squyer, Thanne
shal the Squyere lyft up his armes on high, and the Kyng
shall put his armes about the nekke of the Squyer, and
lyftyenge up his right hande, he shal smyte the Squyer in
the necke, seying thus. Be ye a good Knyght, kyffyng hym.
Aftyrwarde thefe noble and wyfe Knyghtes aforeseid, this
new knyght shal lede into the Chapell with melody, as it
is to forne seid, unto the high awtere, And there he shal
ungyrte the hym, and his swerd with prayers and devocions
shal offre to God, and to holy Cherche, mofte devoutly be
sechyng God that thylke Ordre mofte worthy dewly he may
kepe unto his ende; These thyngs so doon, he shall take a toppe
in wyne, And in the goynga oute of the Chapell, the Mai-
fter Cooke shalbe redy, and doo of his spores, And shall
take hem to hym for his fee, And the reafon is this, that
in cafe be, that the Knyght do aftyr ony thynge that be
defawte and repreef unto the Ordre of Knyghthod; The Mai-
fter Cooke thanne with a grete kynif, with which he dreseth
his Meffes, shal smyte of his spores from his helles, And
therefore in Remembrance of this thyng, the spores of a new
Knyght in order takynge, shalbe fee unto the Maifter Cooke,
perteynyng dewly unto his Offyce. Thanne shall these wyse Knyghtes aforfayd, lede this newe Knyght into the hall ageyn, The which begynnynge the Table of Knyghtes, shall sytte to mete, and the fayd wyse and noble Knyghtes shall sytte aboute hym at the Table. And the noble Knyghtes [new Knyght] shalbe ferved lyke as other been, And as for that tyme, he shall not ete nor drynk at the table, but yf grete nede be, nor he shall not move hym, nor loke hedyr nor thedyr, more than a Wyiff new wedded, And evyr more oon of his 2 Governours shall stonde by hym with a ker-chief, of the which, if one nede come, he may serve hym: And whan the Kyng aryfeth from the Table, and goth into the Chambre, ohe newe Knyght shal be lad unto his cham-bre, with grete multitude of Knyghtes, Squyers and Myn-fralles joyeinge, fyngynge, and daunceynge unto the entre of his Chambre: And there the Knyghtes Squyers and Myn-fralles shall take theyr leve, And the newe Knyght shal goe to ete, The dore shalbe [faft] closed, And he shal doo off his array, which shalbe yoven to the Kynges [off armys if thai be present, and iff thai be not present then to] other Herawdes of Armes. * And also the said Kyng of Armes and Herawdes shal have for the Office of Armes of every Duke, Erle, Barown, and Bachelere aftar theyr aflater, And of the lefte 20 s. for their honours to shew and to trye them in the Kyngs presence and in the said Court. The grey cope shalbe unto the Wayte, or a noble for it. And aftar this mete this noble newe Knyght anoon shalbe arayde with robe of blewe with strayte fleves, And he shal have uppon the lyft shuldere, a white lace of Sylk hangynge, And that lace he shal kepe in that wyse above his clothyng withoutenforth from that day forth contynuynel uuto that tyme he gete hym som manere [name] of worshippe by deservyng, by wytnesse of worthy Knyghtes, and Squyers, Kynges, outher Herawdes of Armes, And trewe Herawdes clerely theaftyr reported: Which reporte mohte entere into the ears of the worthy prynce, which hath made hym Knyght, or of som other, or elles of some noble Lady for to take away the lace fro the shulder, sayynge thus. Right deere Lord, I have herd so moche of your worshippes, and renown, that ye have done in dyverse partyes unto the

* This Clause is omitted in my Copy.  

O grete
grete worshipp of Knyghthod, to youre self, and to hym, that made yow Knyght, that desert and ryght wyll, that this lace be put and take away, But aftyr dyner the worshippful and worthy Knyghtes and Squyres shall come afore the feyd newe Knyght, and hym shall lede to the Kyngs presence. All tymes beyng before hym the said Squyres Governours, And whanne the newe Knyght comyth into the Kyngs presence, he shall knele before the Kynge, and shall fey thus, Moost drad and moost myghty prync of my lyttl power and of [what] that I may I thanke yow of all the worshippes curtesies, [and] goodnesse, which ye have doon unto me; And this feyd, he shall take leve of the Kynge, and upon that, the Governours shall goe and take charyte leve of theyr Mayfter, feyeng thus, Worthipfull Syr, by the Kyngs commaundement, we have servyd you, and that commaundement fulfylled, and performed tooure powere, and what we have doon in oure servuyce ageyn [agenst] your reverence, we praye yow of youre grace to pardon us our negligence: Futhermore of the custom of the Kyngs Courte, we aske and requyre yow of Robys, and fees to the terme of oure [your] lyff covenable [and convenient] to the Kyngs Squyres, felowes to the Knyghtis of other landes.

Memorandum the blew Bachelers gowne shalbe fees to the Officers of Armes, wherfore they shal fynde the scochyns of Armes to set upon the Baynnes and beddis.

NUMB. LXXXIX.

Cy apres ensuit, L’ordonn&nce, & maniere de creer, & faire nou-veaulx Chevaliers du Baing, au temps de paix selon la Cuftume d’Angleterre.

Quant ung Efcuier uient en la Cour, pour recevoir l’ordre de Chevalrie, en tem de paix, selon la Cuftume d’Angletterre, il fera tres noblement receu par les Officiers de la Cour, comme le Seneschal, ou du Chamberlain, si ils sont prefens, & autrement par les Mareschaux, & Huiffiers. Et adonc feront ordonnez deux Efcuiers d’onneur, faiges, & bien apris en courtotisies, & nourritures, & en la maniere du fait de cheval-rie, & ils feront Efcuiers, & Gouverneurs de tout ce, qui appartient a celluy, qui prendra l’ordre defus dict. Et au cas que l’Efcuier vienge devant disner, il servira le Roy de
† une escuille du premier cours seulement. Et puis les dict Escuiers Gouverneurs admenneront l'Escuier, qui prendra l'ordre, en sa chambre, sans plus estre eu en celle journee. Et au vespre les Escuiers Gouverneurs envoyeront apres le Barbier, & il appareilleront ung baing, gracieusement appareille de toile, auffy bien dedans la Cuve, que dehors; & que la Cuve soit bien couverte de tapiz, & manteaulx, pour la froidure de la nuyt. Et adoncques fera l'Escuier rez la barbe, & les cheveulx ronde. Et ce fait, les Escuiers Gouverneurs yront au Roy, & diront, Sire, il est vespre, & l'Escuier est tout appareille au baing, quant vous plaira. Et sur ce, le Roy commandera a son Chamberlan, qu'il admenne avecques luy en la Chambre de l'Escuier les plus gentilz, & les plus saiges Chevaliers, qui font presens, pour luy informer, & conseillier, & enseigner l'ordre, & le fait de chivalrie. Et semblablement que les autres Escuiers de l'offel, avec les menestrelx, voissent pardevant les Chevaliers, chantans, dansans, & esbatans, jufques a l'usy de la chambre du dit Escuier.

Et quant les Escuiers Gouverneurs orront la noyse des menestrelx, ilz despouilleron l'Escuier, & le mettront tout nu dedens le baing. Mais a l'entree de la chambre, les Escuiers Gouverneurs feront cesser les menestrelx, & Escuiers aussi pour le temps, & ce fait les gentilz saiges Chevaliers entreront en la Chambre tout coyement sans noyse faire: Et adoncques les Chevaliers feront reverence l'un a l'autre, qui fera le premier pour conseillier l'Escuier au baing, l'ordre, & le fait. Et quant ilz feront accordes, dont yra le premier au baing, & ylec s'agenoillera par devant la Cuve, en difant en secret. Sire, a grant honneur soit il pour vous cest baing, & puis lui monftrera le fait de l'ordre, au mieux qu'il pourra, & puis mettra de l'eau du baing dessus l'espaulle de l'Escuier; & prendra conge: Et les Escuiers Gouverneurs garderont les costes du baing. En mefme maniere feront tous les autres Chevaliers, l'un apres l'autre, tant qu'ils ayent tous fait. Et donc partiront les Chevaliers hors de la Chambre pour ung temps; ce fait les Escuiers Gouverneurs prendront l'Escuier hors du baing, & le mettront en son lit, tant qu'il soit seche; & fera le dit lit simple fans courtines. Et quant il fera seche, il levera hors du lit, & fera addurne, & vesti bien chaudement

† D'eau, ou de une &c.
O 2 pour
pour le veillier de la nuyt. Et fur tous ses draps il vestira une
cotte de drap Rouflet, avecques unes longues manches, & de le
chapperon, a la ditte Robe, en guise de ung hermite. Et
l'Efcuier aussi hors du baing, & attorne, le barbier offera le
baing, & tout ce, qu'il a entour, aussi bien dedens, comme en
dehors, & le prendra pour son fie, ensemble pour le collier,
comme enfij, si cest chevalier soit Conte, Baron, Baneret ou
Bachelier, selon la cuftume de la Cour; & ce fait, les Efcuiers
Gouverneurs ouvreront l'uyys de la Chambre, & feront les saiges
Chevaliers reentrer, pour mener l'Efcuier a la chapelle. &
quant ilz feront entrez, les Efcuiers esbatans & danfans,
feront admenes pardevant l'Escuier avecques les Mene-
fifrelz faifans leurs Melodies, jusques a la Chapelle. Et
quant ilz feront entrez en la chapelle, les espices, et le
vin feront preftz a donner aus ditz Chevaliers, & Efcuiers: Et
les Efcuiers Gouverneurs admeneront les Chevaliers par devant
l'Escuier pour prendre congïe; & il les mercira tous ensemble
de leur travail, honneur, & courtoiffes, qu'ilz lui ont fait:
& en ce point, ilz departiront hors de la chappelle. Et
fur ce les Efcuiers Gouverneurs fernieront la porte de la Cha-
pelle, & ny demorera, force Efcuier, ses Gouverneurs, ses
preftres, le Chandellier, & le Guet, & en ceste guise demoura
l'Escuier en la Chapelle, tant qu'il foit jour, toujours en oraifon
& prieres, requerant le puissant Seigneuer, & la benoïte mere,
que de leur dime grace, lui donnent pouvoir, & comfort a pren-
dre ceste haute dignite temporelle, en l'honneur, & lovenge de
leur, de Sainte Eglise, & de l'ordre de Chevalere, & quant on
verra le point du jour, on querra le preftre, pour le Confeeller
de tous fes pechies, & orra sesMatines, & messe, & puis fera
accomunichie, s'il veut: Mais de-puis l'entree de la Chapelle,
aura ung cierge ardant devant lui, la messe commencee ung des
Gouverneurs tiendra le Cierge devant l'Escuier, jusque a l'evang-
gille, & a l'evangille, le Gouverneur baillera le cierge a l'Escuier
jusques a la fin de la dit evangele, l'Escuier Gouverneur offera
le cierge, and le mettra devant l'Escuier, jusques a la fin. de la
ditte messe, & a la levacion du Sacrament ung des Gouverneurs
offera le Chapperon de l'Escuier, & apres le Sacrament remettra
jusques a l'evangile, in principio, & au commencement de inprin-
cipio, le Gouverneur offera le chapperon de l'Escuier, & le fera.
efter, & lui donnera le cierge en sa main: Maies quil y ait
ung denier, au plus, pres de la lumiere fichie; & quant ce vient
verbūm carō factūm est, l'Eſcuier fe genoiluera, & offra le cierge & le denier: cefl affavoir, le cierge en l'onuue de dieu; & le denier en l'onuue de lui, qui le fera Chevaueier. Ce fait, les Eſcuiers Gouwneurs remuerront l'Eſcuier en fa chambre, & le mettront en fon lit, jusque a haute jour, & quant il fera en lit, pendant le temps de fon reueuillier, il fera amende, cefl affavoir, avec ung couverton d'or, appelle Sigleton, & ce fera linee du card. Et quant il feemblera temps aux gouverneurs, ilz yront au Roy, & lui diront, Sire, quant il vous plaiera, notre maiftre reueillera, & a ce, le Roy commandera les faiges Chevaliers, Eſcuiers, & Meneftreux, d'aler a la chambre du dit Eſcuier pour le reueuillier, attouner, veſtir & admener pardevant lui, en fa faue; mais par devant leur entree, & la noife des meneftreux oye, les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs ordonnerront toutes fes necessaries pretz par ordre, a bailler aux Chevaliers pour attouner & veſtir l'Eſcuier, & quant les Chevaliers feront venus a la chambre de l'Eſcuier, ils entreront ensemble en silence, & diront a l'Eſcuier, Sire, le tresbon jour, vous foit donne, il eft temps de vous leuer, & adrecier, & avec ce les Gouverneurs le prendront par les braz, & le feront drecier, le plus gentil, ou le plus faige Chevalier donnera a l'Eſcuier sa chemife, ung autre lui baillera fes brages, le tiers lui donnera ung pourpoint, ung autre lui veſtira avec ung Kyrtel de rouge tartarin, deux autres le leveront hors du lit, & deux autres les chaulferont, mais foient les chaulifes denouz avecquez femelles de cuir, & deux autres lasceront fes manches, & ung autre le ceindra de la fanctue de cuir blanc, fans aucun harnois de metau, & ung autre peignera fa teste, & ung autre mettra la coiffe, ung autre lui donnera le mantel de foie de Kyrtel de rouge tartarin, atachez avec ung laz de foie blanc, avec une paire de gans blans, pandus aubout du las: mais le chandellier prendra pour fon fies, tous les garnemens, avec tout l'arroy, & necessaires, en quoy l'Eſcuier estoit attounez, & veſtuz, le jour qu'il entra en la court, pour prendre l'ordre, ensemble le lit, en qui il coucha premierement apres le baing, aufl bien avec le Singleton, que des autres necessitez, pour lefquels fiefz le dit Chendellier trouuer a fes defpens la Coiffe, les gans, la ceinture, & le las: Et puis ce fait les faiges Chevaliers monteront a cheval, & admeuerront l'Eſcuier a la faue, & les meneftreux,toujours devant faillans leurs melodies: Mais fuit le cheval habillie, comme il enfuit; il aura une felle couverte de cuir noir, les arczons de blanc fut...
[ 110 ]

esquartez, les estriviers noires, les fers dorez, le poitral de noir, avec une croix patée doree pendant pardevant le piz du cheval, & fans croupier, le man de noir, a longues cerres a la gnise de Spaigne, & une croix patée au front, & aux ordonne un jeune jouvenfél Escuier gentil, qui chevauchera devant l’Escuier, & il sera dechaperonne, & portera l’espee de l’Escuier, avec les esperons pendans fur les eschalles de l’espee, & soit l’espee a blanches eschalles faictes de blanc cuir, & la ceinture de blanc cuir fanz harnois, & le jouvencel tiendra l’espee par la poignee, & en ce point chevaucheron jusques a la fale du Roy, & feront les Gouverneurs prætz a leur meftier, & les Saiges Chevaliers menants le dit Escuier, & quant il vient, par devant la fale, les mareschaulx, & hensiers se feront prætz a l’encontre de l’Escuier, & lui diront, descendes, & lui descendu, le mareschal prendra fon Cheval pour fie ou C. s. & fur ce, les Chevaliers admenront l’Escuier en la fale, jusques a la haulte table, & puis il fera drecieuz a commencement de la table seconde, jusques a la venue du Roy, les Chevaliers de côte luy, le jouvenfel a bout, l’espee estant pardevant luy, par entre les ditz deux Gouverneurs, & quant le Roy fera venu a la fale, & regardera l’Escuier preft de prendre le hault ordre de dignite temporelle, il demandera l’espee, avec ques les esperons, & le Chamberlain prendra l’espee, & les esperons du jouvencel, & les monfrera au Roy, & fur ce, le Roy prendra l’esperon dextre, & le baillera au plus noble, & plus gentil, & lui dira, mettez ceftui au talon de l’Escuier, & celuy fera agenoilie a l’un genoil, & prendra l’Escuier par la jambe dextre, & mettra fon pied fur fon genoil, & fichera l’esperon au talon dextre de l’ecuier, & le Seigneur fera croix fur le genoil de l’escuier, & lui baiſera, & ce fait, viendra ung autre Seigneur, qui fichera l’esperon au talon fenestre en meme maniere, & donques le Roy, de fa trefgrande courtoisie, prendra l’espee, & la ceindra a l’escuier, & puis l’escuier leuera ses bras en hault, les mains entretenans, & les gans entre les poux, & les doits ; & le Roy mettra ses bras entour le col de l’escuier, & levera la * main dextre, & frapera fur le col, & dira, foyes bon Chevalier, & puis le baiſera: Et adonques les Saiges Chevaliers admenront le nouvel Chevalier a la chapelle, a tres grande melodie, jusques au hault autel: & ylecques fe age-

* In my MS, it is, Et puis de fa main dextre & de l’espee le frapera fur le col, nouillera,
nouillera, & mettra fa dextre main deffus l’autel, & fera promille de souffner le droit de Sainte Eglise, toute fa vie, & adoncques foy mefine deceindra l’espee avec grande devociion, & prieres a Dieu, a Sainte Eglise, & l’offreire, en priant a Dieu, & a tous fes Saincts, qu’il puisse garder l’ordre, qu’il a prins jufques a la fin : & cef accompliz, il preindra une fouppe de vin, & a l’iffue de la chappelle, le maiftre Queux du Roy fera preft de ofter les efperons, & les prendra pour fon fie ; & dira, je fuis venu le maître queux du Roy, & prens vos efperons pour mon fie, & fi vous faites chofes contre l’ordre de chevalerie, que Dieu ne veille, je coupperai vos efperons de deffus vos talons : & puis les chevaliers le remeneront en la fale, & il commencera la table des Chevaliers, & feront afliz entour lui les Chevaliers : & il fera ferui, fi comme les autres ; mais il ne mangera, ne ne beuvera a table, ne ne fe mouvera, ne ne regardera, ne de ca ne dela, non plus, que une nouvelle marrow : & ce fait, ung de ces Gouverneurs aura ung cuerverchef en fa main qu’il tiendra par devant le vifage, quant il fera befoing pour le craifier ; & quant le Roy fera leve hors de fa table, & passe en fa chambre, adoncque le nouvel Chevalier fera mene a grant foifon de Chevaliers, & Menefrelz, devant lui, jufques a fa chambre ; & a l’entree, les Chevaliers, & Menefrelz prendront congé, & il yra a fon diner, & les Chevaliers departiz, fa chambre fera fermee, & le nouvel Chevalier fera despouille de fes parments, & ilz feront donnez aux Roys des Heraulx, fe ils yfont prefens, ou fi non, aux autres Heraulx, fe ils font autrement aux Menefrelz, aavecque ung marc d’argent, fe il est Bachelier, & fe il est Baron, le double ; & fe il est Conte, ou de plus, le double. Et le rouffet cappe de nuit fera donne au Guet, autrement ung noble, & adonc il fera reeeflu d’une robe de bleu, & les manches de cuftote en guiffe d’un preftre ; & il aura a l’efpaule feneftre ung laz de blanche foye pendant, & ce blanc laz il portera fur tous fes habillemens, qu’il veftrira, au long de celle journee, tant qu’il ait gaignie honneur, & renom d’armes, & quil foit recorde de fi hault record, comme de nobles Chevaliers, Ecuiers, & Heraulx d’armes, & quil foit renomme de fes faiz d’armes, comme devant ef dit, ou aucun hault Prince, ou tres noble Dame de pouvoir couper le laz de l’espaule du Chevalier, en difant ; Sire, nous avons ouy tant de vray Re- nom de votre honneur, que vous avez fait en diverfes parties, au tresgrand honneur de Chevalerie, a vous mesmes, & a celluy qui
qui vous a fait Chevalier, que droit veult, que cest laz vous
foit oftez : Mais apres diiner les Chevaliers d'onneur & gentilz
hommes viendront apres le Chevalier, & le admeneront en la
presence du Roy, & les Efcuiers Gouverneurs par devant luy.
Et le Chevalier dira: Tres noble & Redoubte Seir, de tout ce,
que je puis, vous remercie de tous ces honneurs, courtoisies, &
bontez, que vous me avez, & vous en mercie. Et ce dit, il pren-
dra congie du Roy : Et sur ce les Efcuiers Gouverneurs pren-
dront congie de leur maistre en disant, Sire, nous avons fait par
le Commandement du Roy. ainsie comme nous feuines obligez, a
noitre pouvoir. Mais s'il est ainsie, que nous vous ayons despleu
par negligence, ou par fait en cest temps, Nous vous requerons
pardon, & d'autre part, Sire, comme vray droit est, selon les
coustumes de Court, & des Royaulmes anciens, Nous vous de-
mandons Robes, & fiefz a terme de vie, comme Efcuiers du
Roy, Compaignons aux Bacheliers, & aux autres Seigneurs.

In a Copy in the Cott. Libr. Tib. E. 8. p. 86, there follows
this Paragraph.

Et les regarderent honourablement par voy del fee ou auter-
ment comme le man. effe. Et adonqs apres les ditz novelx Che-
valiers chivacherent apertement procheyn devant le Roy de-
fuis le Barons & noblez del realme iffint qil purront effir —
on le Roy pleira, come ils soient faitz a le tour de Loundres, il
chivacheront a Westm. Payleys, ou autrement seront procheyn
devant le Roy tout le temps del tryumpe, qils font faitz Che-
valiers.

FINIS.